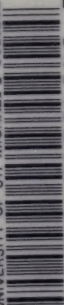


UNIVERSITY OF ST. MICHAEL'S COLLEGE



3 1761 01856848 5

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

FOR

MIDDLE & UPPER FORMS

BY

E. H. PILSBURY



OXFORD

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS



LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

For Middle and Upper Forms

BY

E. H. PILSBURY B.A.

Assistant Master at Charterhouse

OXFORD
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1922

Oxford University Press

London Edinburgh Glasgow Copenhagen

New York Toronto Melbourne Cape Town

Bombay Calcutta Madras Shanghai

Humphrey Milford Publisher to the UNIVERSITY

Printed in England

P R E F A C E

THE arrangement of the chapters in this book is intended to adapt them for use in the Middle and Upper Forms of a Public School. The exercises are designed to supply a thorough drill in the constructions explained, and are arranged under three headings, A, B, C. Those marked A are quite simple sentences, suitable for boys in Under School, while those marked B are harder, are intended for pupils who have already made some progress, and frequently assume acquaintance with constructions and idioms which are explained in later chapters. The exercises marked C are pieces of simple continuous prose. The chapters and the exercises are both intended to be progressive, the more difficult matters being left till the later part of the book ; and it is hoped that by allotting a definite section to each Form the book may meet the requirements of a succession of Forms through Middle and Upper School.

Some apology may seem due for beginning the book with a chapter on ' The Date in Latin '. It is of course open to any teacher to postpone this information to a later period, or to omit it altogether ; but I have found that even the youngest boys in the lower Forms will take interest in it, and take pride in correctly heading their exercises with the date in Latin.

No special vocabularies have been written for the several exercises, but it is hoped that the General Vocabulary will be found sufficient for most of a boy's requirements. This vocabulary is not, however, intended to do more than indicate the most suitable word or words to use ; it neither tells, nor professes to tell, anything of their inflections or usage. ALL

SUCH INFORMATION MUST BE OBTAINED FROM A GOOD LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY ; and it cannot be too strongly impressed on the pupil that constant use of the Latin-English Dictionary (by which he will discover something of the inflections and the usage, and the history of the meanings, of a word) is vital to his progress. The boy who looks out 'Cold' and finds 'Frigus', and then, to avoid the trouble of using his Latin-English Dictionary, assumes that it is declined like Dominus, is not likely to make much progress or to do much good.

My thanks are due to the reader of the Oxford University Press for his kind and helpful criticisms and suggestions, as well as to several colleagues and friends, especially to Dr. T. E. Page for giving me the benefit of his eminent scholarship in regard to several important points, to the Rev. F. P. Long for permission to make free use of his admirable work on Caesar's *Gallic War*, and to Mr. F. Dames Longworth for kind help with a number of the continuous pieces, of which he has written some excellent Latin versions.

CHARTERHOUSE,

April 1921

CONTENTS

CHAP.		PAGE
I.	To express the Date in Latin	7
II.	Some Uses of the Genitive	10
III.	Some Uses of the Ablative	13
IV.	Indirect Statement and Accusative and Infinitive	16
V.	Commands, Positive and Negative	19
VI.	Indirect Statement with Hoping and Promising	21
VII.	To Tell	23
VIII.	Indirect Command and Petition	26
IX.	Direct Questions	29
X.	Indirect Questions	32
XI.	Abstract Expressions turned by Concrete	36
XII.	Final Clauses	38
XIII.	Consecutive Clauses	40
XIV.	Final and Consecutive Clauses (mixed)	43
XV.	Time At which, During which, Within which, &c.	46
XVI.	Extent of Space, Place, &c.	49
XVII.	Passive of Intransitive and Dative Verbs	52
XVIII.	Impersonal Verbs	54
XIX.	Participles and the Ablative Absolute (1)	58
XX.	„ „ „ „ „ (2)	61
XXI.	Future Infinitives and Participles	64
XXII.	Further Uses of the Ablative	67
XXIII.	Predicative Dative	70
XXIV.	Comparative Sentences	72
XXV.	Supines	75
XXVI.	Price and Value	78
XXVII.	Gerunds and Gerundives	81

CHAP.	PAGE
XXVIII. Verbs of Fearing	85
XXIX. Relative with Subjunctive	87
XXX. Verbs of Preventing, Forbidding, Refusing, &c.	89
XXXI. Quin with Verbs of Preventing, Denying, &c. .	91
XXXII. Dum	94
XXXIII. <u>Cum</u>	96
XXXIV. Conditional Sentences, (1) Open	99
XXXV. " " (2) With Implication	103
XXXVI. " " (3) Mixed	104
XXXVII. Oratio Obliqua	105
XXXVIII. <u>Commands, Questions, &c., in Oratio Obliqua</u> .	111
XXXIX. Conditionals in Oratio Obliqua	115
XL. Causal Clauses	120
XLI. Concessive Clauses	124
XLII. Conditional Sentences of Comparison	126
XLIII. Pronouns : Se, Suus, Ipse, &c.	129
XLIV. Some	135
XLV. Any	139
Vocabulary	144

I. To express the DATE IN LATIN

Every Roman month had three chief days, called respectively the Kalends (Kalendae), the Nones (Nonae), and the Ides (Idus).

The Kalends were always the first day of the month.

The Nones were the 5th and the Ides the 13th day of the month, except in four months which put them both two days later :

March, May, July, October, these are they

Make Nones the seventh, Ides the fifteenth day.

The Months were denoted by *adjectives* ; Ianuarius, Februarius, Martius, Aprilis, Maius, Iunius, Iulius or Quinctilis, Augustus or Sextilis, September, October, November, December.

The Ablative of Kalendae, Nonae, and Idus is used to express the date when it falls *on* one of these main points of the month ; and the *day before* any of these dates is expressed by *pridie* with the Accusative ; e.g. :

Kalendis Decembribus, The 1st of December.

Pridie Kalendas Decembres, The 30th November.

Idibus Martiis, The 15th of March.

Pridie Idus Martias, The 14th of March.

NOTE 1. Of these adjectives, those ending in *-us* are declined like *bonus*, those in *-er* like *acer*, and those in *-is* like *tristis*.

NOTE 2. The expressions Pridie Kalendas, Pridie Nonas, &c., are treated as indeclinable nouns, and may stand for any case, as :

Iamque adest pridie Kalendas Ianuarias.

And now the 31st of December has come.

When a date fell *between* two of these main points of the month, the Romans expressed it as being so many days *before* whatever chief day came next ; and it must be carefully noted that in counting the number of days by which one date preceded another, the Romans counted the days at *both* ends, whereas we should count only one ; e.g. we should count January 2 as being *three* days before January 5, but the Romans counted it as being *four* days before.

The formula by which the date was then expressed was *Ante diem* (abbreviated *A. D.*) followed by the ordinal numeral in agreement with *diem*, and then by the next chief day of the month, in the Accusative case ; e. g. :

January 2nd is *Ante diem quartum Nonas Ianuarias* (abbreviated *a. d. IV Non. Ian.*).

NOTE 1. This form of expression is peculiar and idiomatic. We might have expected *Die quarto ante Nonas*, but the preposition which governs *Nonas* seems to have become misplaced ; and the *Die quarto* is attracted into the Accusative, as though also governed by the *ante*.

NOTE 2. The formula *Ante diem*, &c., became so far crystallized as to be treated as an indeclinable substantive ; e. g. :

Ex ante diem quintum Idus Martias ad a. d. tertium Kalendas Apriles.

From the 11th March to the 30th.

Rem distulit in ante diem quartum Kal. Dec.

He put the matter off till the 28th Nov.

Exercise 1 (A)

Write in full the Latin for :

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1. On April 1. | 6. June 24. |
| 2. Nov. 5. | 7. March 30. |
| 3. Dec. 4. | 8. Aug. 12. |
| 4. Oct. 6. | 9. Feb. 13. |
| 5. Jan. 20. | 10. Dec. 14. |

Exercise 2 (B)

1. The 15th of March has already passed.
2. The 30th of June is drawing near.
3. The holidays will end about Sept. 20.
4. The engagement was fought on May 16.
5. The battle lasted from Sept. 30 to Oct. 3.
6. When the 1st of May arrives we shall all rejoice.
7. We hope to remain in London till the end of July ; on Aug. 12 we shall travel to Scotland.
8. I have asked Balbus to dinner on (*in*, with acc.) Nov. 25, Tullius on Dec. 4.
9. We stayed at Athens from Christmas Day till Jan. 22.
10. I wrote to you from Rome on April 6 ; this I write from Florence.

Exercise 3 (C)

CICERO WRITES TO HIS FRIEND TIRO

We departed from you, as you know, on the 2nd of November ; on the 6th we arrived at Leucas, and on the 7th at Actium ; we tarried there during the 8th on account of the weather ; then on the 9th we made an excellent voyage to Corcyra. We were at Corcyra till the 16th Nov., weather bound. On the 17th we proceeded a short distance to Cassiope, the Corcyraean harbour. There we were detained by the winds till the 23rd. Meantime, many of those who had impatiently started made shipwreck. We weighed anchor on that day after dinner. Then with a light south-easterly breeze and a clear sky we reached Italy on the following day, and with the same wind on the next day (this was the 24th) we reached Brundisium about 10 o'clock in the morning¹ ; and Terentia, who thinks the world of you, arrived at the town at the same time as ourselves. On Nov. 27 a slave of Cn. Plancus at last brought me a long-looked-for letter from you, dated Nov. 13, which relieved me from much anxiety ; would that it had set me quite at rest ! I am afraid there will be a great disturbance at Rome on Jan. 1. I know you will do all you can to be with us as soon as possible. I have left a horse and a mule at Brundisium for you. It remains to beg and implore you not to sail rashly. Be cautious, my Tiro ; a great and difficult sea lies before you. Again and again farewell.

Brundisium, Dec. 5.

II. *Some Uses of the GENITIVE*PARTITIVE GENITIVE ; SUBJECTIVE AND OBJECTIVE
GENITIVES ; GENITIVE OF QUALITY ; ADJECTIVES
AND VERBS GOVERNING GENITIVES

The PARTITIVE GENITIVE denotes the whole of which a part is taken, as in 'some of you', 'the best of them', 'five of us'.

Such expressions are translated into Latin either by the

¹ Say 'At the fourth hour' ; the Romans roughly divided the period from sunrise to sunset into twelve hours.

Partitive Genitive, or by the preposition *ex* and the Abl. Thus 'The bravest of the Romans' may be either 'Fortissimi Romanorum', or 'Fortissimi ex Romanis'.

NOTE 1. In English we go so far as to speak of '*all of us*', &c., and the expression, though illogical and evidently formed by false analogy, is sanctioned by custom. But old English preferred the more correct '*all we*' (e.g. All we like sheep have gone astray), and Latin always writes '(Nos) omnes erravimus'.

NOTE 2. English has a further redundant '*of*' in such expressions as The city *of* Rome, The county *of* Surrey. Latin Prose does not use a Genitive in such expressions, but has the name in apposition, as Urbs Roma.

A Partitive Genitive frequently follows such words as Multum, Paulum, Plus, Parum, Satis, and the like, as :

Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum. Enough (of) eloquence, too little (of) wisdom.

SUBJECTIVE AND OBJECTIVE GENITIVES. Such expressions as The fear of the enemy, The love of God, &c., are ambiguous, since they may denote either :

1. The fear with which the enemy regards us, The love which God has for us ; or 2. The fear with which we regard the enemy, The love we have of God.

The Latin in either case is the same, viz. Timor hostium, Amor Dei, and is therefore as ambiguous as the English. But in the first case these Genitives are called *subjective* Genitives (The enemy fear us, God loves us), and in the second case *objective* Genitives (We fear the enemy, We love God).

Objective Genitives are frequent in Latin where in English we use a preposition between two substantives, as The desire *for* fame, Laudis cupido ; Exemption *from* military service, Militiae vacatio ; Skill *in* navigation, Navigandi peritia.

NOTE. The pronouns Nos and Vos have two forms of the Genitive, viz. Nostrum and Nostri, Vestrum and Vestri. Of these the forms in *-um* are Partitive, and the forms in *-i* Objective. Hence :

The greater part (number) of us, Maior pars nostrum ; but Our mind is the best part of us, Animus est pars melior nostri.

(But with Omnium the forms in *-um* must always be used, e.g. Omnium nostrum immemor, Forgetful of us all.)

THE GENITIVE OF QUALITY (like the Ablative of Quality) must always have a defining adjective ; thus A man of influence,

is *Vir magnae auctoritatis*. (It is hence called in Grammars, The Genitive of Quality *with epithet*.)

NOTE. The Genitive of Quality is not so common as the Ablative of Quality. It seems to be used of essential and permanent characteristics rather than of accidental and superficial qualities.

WORDS TAKING A GENITIVE. 1. The Genitive is frequent with Adjectives implying Fullness of, Knowledge of, Desire of, Power over, and their opposites.

2. Many verbs of Remembering, and Forgetting, take a Genitive.

NOTE. They frequently also take an Accusative, especially of Things ; it is best in every case to examine the dictionary.

3. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning, and Acquitting, take a Genitive of the Charge.

(The Genitives of Value, and Genitives with Impersonal Verbs, &c., are dealt with in other sections.)

Exercise 4 (A)

1. The majority (larger part) of the soldiers were wounded in that battle.

2. He alone of them all reached the top of the mountain.

3. We have too much bread and too little meat.

4. Romulus, the first king of the Romans, was a man of great vigour (*robur*).

5. The fear of God is the beginning of wisdom.

6. I have something good for you.

7. He suffered no evil among the lions.

8. Among the Romans the Indus was believed to be the greatest of all rivers.

9. Many of you remember that happy time.

10. I have not been unmindful of you, citizens, in these great dangers.

11. Two thousand of the enemy were slain, of our own men very few.

12. So much pleasure is not good for you.

13. He was a man of genius, but had not enough patriotism (love for his country).

14. We cannot all of us become soldiers, but we can all be of service to our country.

Exercise 5 (B)

1. If you find anything new, see that you write to me at once.
2. Now that the struggle is over, very few of the enemy, but all of us, are able to rejoice.
3. Would that you had shown less zeal and more discretion.
4. How few (*quotusquisque*) of the philosophers can bring comfort to one suffering pain !
5. Although inexperienced in war, he was patient of toil and cold, and most devoted to his country.
6. Who is there who does not despise one that is unmindful of a kindness ?
7. Tullius, a man of old-time sternness (*priscus, severitas*), urged that the prisoners should be put to death.
8. Shall we not all of us, having been partakers in the struggle, be partakers also in the reward ?
9. These fellows came to such a pitch of folly as to play leap-frog (use *saltare*) in the forum in broad daylight (say *luce palam*).
10. Do you wish to know how many of us there are here ?
11. A mind that is conscious of right can laugh at Rumour's lies.
12. Where is the man that is of spotless life and free from sin ?

Exercise 6 (C)

THE SPY

Though indolent by nature, and unaccustomed to hard work, he was recognized as a man of great ability, and having acquired some reputation in the law courts and amassed a respectable fortune, he was at length allowed to share in the counsels of the state. In Parliament he is said to have displayed more eloquence than wisdom ;* but nevertheless he exercised considerable influence and was instrumental in the passing of a few important measures. On the outbreak of war, forgetful of the many kindnesses he had received from our citizens, and desirous of benefiting his native land and at the same time increasing his own wealth, he resolved to act as a spy in the service of the enemy. For two years he supplied information on state matters to the leaders of the enemy, unknown to our citizens ; and on the discovery of a plot to burn down the city of London, being charged with

treachery, he could not deny that he had been an accomplice in the plot. Conscious of his crime and of base ingratitude to the people who had shown him nothing but generosity and kindness, he did not beg them to pity him, but declared that his love for his own native land had compelled him to act as he had. Having thus confessed his guilt, he was condemned to death and executed shortly before the end of the war.

III. Some Uses of the ABLATIVE

INSTRUMENT, AGENT, ORIGIN, RESPECT, MANNER, COMPARISON

INSTRUMENT. The instrument or means with or *by which* a thing is done, is expressed by the Ablative *without* preposition ; as :

The bird was killed with (or, by) a stone. *Avis interfecta est lapide.*

AGENT. But the living agent *by whom* a thing is done, is expressed by the Ablative *with* the preposition *a* or *ab* ; as :
Caesar was killed by Brutus. *Caesar interfectus est a Bruto.*

ORIGIN. Words meaning 'sprung from', 'born of', and the like, naturally take the Ablative ; as :

Born of Jove. *Iove natus.*

Sprung from royal blood. *Regio sanguine ortus.*

RESPECT. The Ablative of Respect is joined to Verbs and Adjectives, as :

Temporibus erras. You are wrong in the dates.

Provectus annis. Advanced in years.

MANNER. 'With' must not be translated by the simple Ablative unless it denotes instrumentality : e.g. 'I smote him with a sword' is *Gladio eum percussi*, but 'He came with speed' may *not* be translated simply by *Celeritate venit*. To the Romans such an expression would not have seemed sufficiently defined, as the question would have arisen 'with *what* speed', and they preferred to state explicitly what the English *implies*, viz. 'with *great* speed'. Accordingly they were careful to add a defining adjective, and wrote '*summa* celeritate venit'.

(They sometimes also wrote *Cum* celeritate, or the adverb Celeriter ; but never Celeritate alone).

NOTE. As exceptions to this rule, however, a few Ablatives are used alone to express Manner. They are regarded as Adverbs, and require no adjective. Such are: iure, rightly; iniuria, wrongly; verbo, in word; specie, in appearance; re, in reality; forte, by chance; dolo, by craft; vi, by force; sponte, by choice; natura, naturally.

COMPARISON. The Latin for the English Conjunction ' than ' is *quam*, and the noun which follows it is put in the same case as the corresponding noun which precedes it; as:

No one is wiser than Socrates. Nemo sapientior est quam Socrates.

He said that no one was wiser than Socrates. Negavit quemquam sapientiorem esse quam Socratem.

In such sentences *Quam* and the noun following may be replaced by the noun alone *in the ablative*, which is then called the Ablative of Comparison, and we may write:

Nemo sapientior est Socrate, and

Negavit quemquam sapientiorem esse Socrate.

But the Ablative of Comparison may only be used for the direct comparison of two nouns in the Nominative (or Accusative); and for such a sentence as:

This is more pleasant *for you* than *for me*
the *quam* construction only is available, and we must write:

Hoc iucundius est tibi quam mihi.

NOTE. In such a sentence as This is more useful than beautiful, the Latin idiom is to put *both* adjectives in the Comparative:

Hoc utilius est quam pulchrius.

Exercise 7 (A)

1. The lad slew the giant with a stone.
2. After two months the town was stormed by the Romans.
3. Caius was born of humble parents.
4. In this matter you have acted with wisdom.
5. What is harder than stone? what is softer than water?
6. You surpass your comrades not in mind, but in body.
7. I have never seen a horse more beautiful than this.
8. In clothing and in manners they are like the Gauls.

9. What is there in man more godlike than reason ?
10. Though saucy (*procax*) of tongue he is a coward at heart.
11. You give advice more expedient than honourable.
12. The town had been surrounded with a ditch by the enemy.
13. This was not done by chance but by an enemy.

Exercise 8 (B)

1. My father chastised you with whips, but I will chastise you with scorpions.
2. I promised you this in good faith, and with God's help I will perform it.
3. He had enjoyed great luxury through most of his life ; he died a pauper, of hunger and want.
4. For this army it was ordered that all under (*minores*) forty-two should be enrolled.
5. If your neighbour had a better house than your own, would you prefer your house or his ?
6. Whatsoever work thou findest to do, do it with thy might.
7. Does any one really believe that Apollo was born of Jupiter and Latona ?
8. Order me also to be slain, so that you may boast that a far (*multo*) better man than yourself has been slain by you.
9. Good is no more born of evil than a fig from an olive.
10. Although in that line (*genus*) we see nothing more perfect than the statues of Phidias, nevertheless are we not able to imagine (*cogitare*) statues still more beautiful ?
11. Let us prefer to die with honour than to live with dishonour.

Exercise 9 (C)

On the first arrival of our army, the enemy made frequent sallies from their town, and did battle with our men in light skirmishes. Soon, however, finding that although they had the advantage in point of numbers, they were by no means superior to our men in valour, they cast aside all hopes of defeating us in the field, and kept themselves within their walls. The town was defended by a rampart fifteen feet in thickness, and fortified by numerous redoubts, and they felt confident that it could never be captured by force of arms, especially by an army

as small as ours. Our sappers' huts having been drawn into position, and a siege-mound constructed, when they saw an artillery-tower being set up at some distance from the town, they were at first provoked to merriment, and gibed at us from the wall, wondering to what end so pretentious an edifice was being raised at such a distance from them. With what hands, they asked, and with what strength, could any one, especially men of such small stature, hope to plant a tower of such magnitude against their city walls? But when they saw it moving, and slowly bearing down upon their ramparts, alarmed beyond measure by the strange and unprecedented sight, they sent out envoys to Caesar, and begged him to grant them peace.

IV. INDIRECT STATEMENT and the ACCUSATIVE and INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION

In the sentence 'He declared his innocence', the object of the verb 'declared' is the noun 'innocence'. In the sentence 'he declared that he was innocent' the object of the verb 'declared' is the *noun clause* 'that he was innocent'.

When in this way a clause becomes the object of a verb of saying or thinking, it is called an INDIRECT STATEMENT.

When the main verb is in the passive, the noun-clause embodying the indirect statement is its subject, e. g. *nuntiatum est urbem captam esse*, 'That the city had been captured, (or, the capture of the city) was announced.'

The ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE construction used in such cases, is one of the commonest in Latin, and ought to present no difficulties to the student, inasmuch as with many verbs we use it in English as an alternative to the commoner construction introduced by the conjunction 'that'; e. g. we say indifferently 'I believe *that he is* an honest man' or 'I believe *him to be* an honest man'.

The beginner sometimes finds it difficult to know what *tense* to put the infinitive verb into, when translating an indirect statement introduced by the conjunction 'that' in English; but if he will turn the indirect statement into the Accusative and Infinitive construction *in English* before trans-

lating into Latin, the difficulty will disappear ; e. g. if before translating the sentence ' he declared that he was innocent ' into Latin he will recast it into the form ' he declared himself *to be* innocent ', it at once becomes clear that the Latin is ' Affirmavit se innocentem *esse* ' (not *fuisse*).

(In other words, the rule is that if the time referred to by the infinitive is the same as that of the verb of saying or thinking, if, e. g. in the above example the speaker said ' *I am* innocent ' and not ' *I was* innocent ', then the present *esse* is the word to use, and not the past *fuisse*).

Note that ' I say that . . . not ' must always be translated into Latin by *NEGO*, never by *dico . . . non*. On the other hand, other verbs which mean to say or assert, such as *affirmo*, may be followed by *non*.

Exercise 10 (A)

1. I believe him to be a good citizen.
2. The old man wished his sons to be sent for.
3. Socrates considered himself to be a citizen of the whole world.
4. He declared that he was speaking the truth ; I now know that he was lying.
5. Who say ye that I am ?
6. The Athenians believed that the sun and the moon were gods.
7. We now know that the sun and the moon and this earth of ours were once all joined together.
8. We all hope the enemy will soon be conquered.
9. I heard him say that these things were not true.
10. How often do you think I am going to tell you the same things ?
11. They say that those whom the gods love (pres. subjunct.), die young.

Exercise 11 (B)

1. He said that I was not wise ; you say that I was not honest.
2. Do you think I will sell my country for two shillings (*trini denarii*) a day ?

3. You ought to have answered before ; I thought you did not know.
4. He said he would do it if he could.
5. Can any one boast that he has never sinned ?
6. They declared that with Balbus as leader they would not shrink even from famine.
7. He said that he was different from what he once had been.
8. The envoys, arriving at the city gates at dawn, pretended that they were followed by two legions.
9. They declared that the enemy had marched twenty miles by night, and were now close at hand.
10. The youthful Titus believed that he knew everything ; the aged philosopher declared that there was no man among us, not even the youngest, but sometimes made a mistake.
11. How old do you think Caius ? I have no idea how old he is.
12. Laelius used to say that he was never less alone than when alone.
13. He was unable, he replied, to ascertain whether the affair had turned out successfully or not.

Exercise 12 (C)

A brother of Jocasta's, whose name was Creon, now became King of Thebes, and he commanded that the fallen Thebans should be buried with great honour, but that Polynices and the Argives should be left unburied on the field of battle, to be food for dogs and vultures. The Greeks believed that those whose bodies were not buried found no rest in the lower world, and they never offered such an insult as this to the memory of any but their most deadly enemies. A herald went through the city, proclaiming to the Thebans that if any one dared to give burial to Polynices or any of the Argives, he would have to answer for it with his life.

Every one was afraid to disobey, excepting one, and that one was a woman—Antigone, the sister of Polynices. She had been very angry with her brothers for casting off their father Oedipus in his time of need, but now that they were dead, she wept for them, and could not bear that either of them should be dishonoured.

(WITT, *Myths of Hellas.*)

V. COMMANDS, POSITIVE and NEGATIVE

I. In the Second Person.

Commands in the Second Person are expressed differently in Latin according as they are Positive, e. g. Go, or Negative, e.g. Do not go.

POSITIVE COMMANDS

in the Second Person are expressed :

(1) By the Imperative, as Love thou, Ama. Love ye, Amate. (The forms *amato* and *amatote* are more formal and not so commonly used ; they are sometimes called the future tense of the Imperative, 'Thou shalt love'.)

(2) By *Cura* (Imperative of *Curo*) and *ut* with Subjunctive. *Cura ut valeas*. See that you keep well.

NOTE. The *Ut* is sometimes omitted.

(3) By *Fac* (Imperative of *Facio*) and Subjunctive, with or without *Ut*. *Bono animo fac sis*, Be of good cheer.

NEGATIVE COMMANDS

in the Second Person are expressed :

(1) By *Noli* (Imperative of *Nolo*) with Infinitive.

(2) By *Cave* (Imperative of *Caveo*) and Subjunctive (with or without *Ne*).

(3) By *Ne* with the Perfect Subjunctive.

Of these, *Noli* with Infinitive constitutes a polite appeal.

Cave with Subjunctive cautions a man against what may bring harm, while

Ne with Perfect Subjunctive amounts to an imperious order, such as is spoken by one in authority to an inferior.

II. In the First and Third Persons.

If the verb is in the First or Third Person, the command amounts to little more than a suggestion, and Latin regularly used the *Present Subjunctive* in such cases, whether Positive or Negative, e. g. :

Let him go out, *Exeat* ; Let us not go back, *Ne redeamus*.

NOTE. It is important to remember that the negative used in commands is always *ne* (never *Non*) ; and that instead of 'et ne' we should

write *neve* or *neu*, though *neque* is also used if the first of two commands is positive :

Ne timueris, neve hinc discesseris. Do not fear, and do not depart hence.
Crede mihi, neque dubitaveris. Believe me, and do not doubt.

Exercise 13 (A)

1. Flee not, soldiers ; resist the enemy, even to death.
2. Let us go out and get the horses ready.
3. Love your enemies ; hate not even those that revile and persecute you.
4. Let them not return home ; let them remain here until the third month.
5. Be not familiar with (*familiariter uti*) a man so depraved.
6. Tell me, my son, your friend's name.
7. Do not pretend to be wiser than your father.
8. Do not stay at home, but come back here with all speed.
9. Let us wage this war with all our strength.
10. Promise not, but perform ; be not angry ; try to help your friends.

Exercise 14 (B)

1. Be not overcome by evil, but overcome evil with good.
2. Neither a borrower nor a lender be.
3. Let us leave this accursed city, and never return.
4. Do not suppose that I am angry with you ; I only want to be of service to you.
5. Be not mindful of injuries, but forgive even your enemies.
6. Do not deceive yourself ; a life of laziness and luxury inevitably brings its own punishment.
7. Be sure you come and see me as soon as you arrive in London.
8. Add faith unto your force, and be not faint. (Spenser.)
9. Remember to keep a calm mind in times of stress.
10. Suffer fools gladly ; prove all things, hold fast to that which is good.
11. Get every penny you earn ; earn every penny you get.
12. Learn what is true in order to do what is right ; that I believe is the whole duty of man.

Exercise 15 (C)

(EXTRACT FROM A LETTER)

Do what you like now, provided that I hear nothing of the same kind hereafter. I am tired of a plan which becomes every day more difficult to accomplish. You will not affirm that what pleased me for three days ought to please me for three hundred. Do not suppose I am angry with you. It is prudence not to commit oneself to another's rashness, but baseness, having elected to follow him, to reproach him with his ill fortune. Besides, though I could have been safe at Edinburgh, I have obtained this much, that I know how to avoid what injures me. If you take care, I shall not complain. Only do not ask me to applaud you as if I were at home.

VI. *INDIRECT STATEMENT with VERBS
of HOPING, PROMISING, and
THREATENING*

Verbs of hoping, promising, and threatening, like verbs of saying and thinking, naturally take the Accusative and Infinitive construction ; but inasmuch as promises and threats always, and hopes nearly always, refer to the future, the Latin uses the Infinitive *Future* and not the Infinitive Present. It must be carefully noted also that *the Accusative must always be expressed*, e. g. I promise to come. Polliceor *me* venturum esse.

He hoped to win. Speravit *se* victurum esse.

(In those cases where hopes refer to the present or the past, as occasionally happens, the Latin uses the present or past infinitive accordingly, e. g. I hope you are well. Spero *te* valere.

I hope they have returned home. Spero *eos* domum rediisse.)

These verbs may also govern a noun instead of a verb, as Pacem sperant, They hope for peace. Note that when the verb 'to threaten' is followed by a noun, the *thing* threatened is put into the accusative (direct object), and the *person* in the dative (Indirect object) ; as Mortem mihi minatus est.

“ He threatened me with death ” will be

In Latin “ Threatened death to me ”.

NOTE. *Minor* may also be used with an Instrumental Ablative, as Minari gladio, To threaten with a sword.

As *Possum* has no Future Infinitive, we occasionally find the Present Infinitive used in its place ; but if special stress is to be laid on the futurity, it will be better to use the periphrasis *Futurum esse ut*, or *Fore ut*.

Exercise 16 (A)

1. We hope to be in Rome on the first of April.
2. I promise to come to you in (say ' to ') Florence and to return here with you.
3. The Emperor threatened to destroy the enemy's lands with fire and sword.
4. Did you not promise to work four hours a day ?
5. I hope you have read the book I gave you.
6. The general threatened the traitors with death.
7. Promise me never to use such words again.
8. The foolish king hoped that his enemies would be conquered in three months.
9. He threatened to follow the thieves and inflict severe punishment (*supplicio aliquem afficere*) on them.
10. I hope that you are studying your books diligently, and will try to bring credit both to yourself and to your parents.

Exercise 17 (B)

1. So you threaten not to write to me, unless I first write to you ?
2. This I cannot yet do, but I hope soon to be able (use *fore ut*, or *posse* may be used for the future).
3. I hope to come, but doubt whether I shall be able.
4. That which the young man hopes to achieve, the old man has already accomplished.
5. Hoping to alarm him, I threatened him with legal proceedings.
6. A deserter came to the camp of Fabricius, and promised that if he would give him a reward, he would return secretly to the camp of Pyrrhus and kill him with poison.
7. When King Lysimachus threatened Theodorus with crucifixion (say, the cross) he said, ' Keep those threats of yours for your own courtiers (*purpurati*) ; it matters not to Theodorus whether he rots on the ground or in the air ' (*sublime*).

8. They say that Juno appeared to Hannibal (when he was) wishing to take away a golden pillar from her temple, and threatened that if he did so, she would see to it that he lost his good eye (say, that eye also with which he saw well).

9. The two girls promised that they would try to be back before nightfall.

10. He said he had great hope that there would soon be an improvement in the situation.

Exercise 18 (C)

This brave old king, having vanquished the enemy in fifteen engagements, was at length so badly wounded that he knew that he was about to die. Nevertheless he hoped that the enemy, so often severely bruised, would soon be completely crushed. Accordingly he sent for his son, a youth twenty-eight years old, who had already shown himself a brave soldier, and was now in command of the king's cavalry. The son replied that he could not come at once, inasmuch as the camp was not fortified and the enemy were not far off; but he promised to come within two days. On his arrival the old man explained how he wished the war carried on, and implored him never to surrender to the enemy. 'Fear not', said the son, 'we would all rather die a thousand times than be conquered by a foe so treacherous and cowardly.' And when he heard those words the king bade his son return as quickly as possible to the camp, and himself died happy.

VII. TO TELL

The word 'tell' is a frequent source of trouble, and the only way to avoid mistakes is carefully to consider the *meaning* of the word before translating into Latin.

(1) When it means simply to 'say' or 'relate', *dico* or *narro* may be used:

He used to tell many stories about Laelius. *Multa de Laelio narrabat.*

(2) When the word means 'to inform', it is generally best to use the phrase '*certiorem facere*':

I told him the city had been taken. *Certiores eum feci urbem captam esse.*

We were told that the enemy had departed. *Certiores facti sumus hostes discessisse.*

Or *Nuntiare* may often be used :

The general was suddenly told that the enemy were at hand.

Imperatori subito nuntiatum est hostes adesse.

(3) But often the word means 'to order', when *Iubeo* or *Impero* must be used. (N.B.—*Iubeo* is an Accusative verb, commonly followed by the Infinitive ; *Impero* is a Dative verb followed by *Ut* with the Subjunctive.)

He told the soldiers to go on board.

Iussit milites naves conscendere.

Imperavit militibus ut naves conscenderent.

The soldiers were told to go on board.

Iussi sunt milites naves conscendere.

Imperatum est militibus ut naves conscenderent.

For 'to tell . . . not' to do anything, *Impero ne* (with Subjunctive) or *Veto* with Infinitive, should be used (not *Iubeo non*).

He told the boy not to leave the temple.

Puero imperavit ne e templo exiret.

Puerum vetuit e templo exire.

(4) 'To tell lies' is *Mentiri* ; 'to tell the truth' is *vera dicere* (to say true things) ; for 'tell one thing from another' *diiudicare* may often be used ; for 'tell' in sense of 'give information' *indico* is a possible word ; and for 'we are told' in the sense 'there is a tradition that', we find *accepimus* and *traditum est*, as well as *ferunt* and *fertur*, common in the historians.

Exercise 19 (A)

1. Travellers used to tell many strange stories about that island.
2. I told the boy to finish the work as quickly as possible.
3. We were told that all these men had been condemned to death.
4. Tell me, my son, what you did in the city.
5. Caesar told Labienus to undertake the building of a bridge over (*in* with abl.) the Thames.
6. Labienus told Caesar that a bridge had already been made.

7. The general told his men not to leave the camp.
8. The enemy have told many lies concerning this war.
9. He told the citizens that a serious danger was at hand.
10. How often have I told you not to go out alone !

Exercise 20 (B)

1. We are told that the ancient Britons painted their bodies with woad.

2. The ancients used to tell many wonderful stories about Lake Avernus.

3. So much alike in form and face are the two sisters that it is difficult to tell them apart.

4. Wheresoever I am sung or told in aftertime, this also shall be known.

5. In telling this story the boy told so many lies that his father told him either to tell the truth or to hold his tongue (*conticesco*).

6. Pompey had not yet told his men what he intended to do.

7. It is not always easy to tell truth from falsehood, right from wrong.

8. It is possible that a man may tell the truth from a wrong motive.

9. He suffered everything rather than tell.

10. How much I owe to the faithful service of my friend, it would be impossible to tell.

11. Do you think it can ever be justifiable to tell a lie ?

12. It was not easy to tell which was to be preferred to the other (*uter utri*) in point of bravery.

Exercise 21 (C)

Roman writers tell many wonderful stories about the foundation of their city. Numitor, king of Alba, had a daughter Rhea Silvia, who (as the story goes) having been secretly married to the god Mars, gave birth to twins. The twins, so much alike that it was difficult to tell them apart, were named Romulus and Remus. Now Amulius, younger brother of Numitor, a man of evil character, drove out his brother and seized the throne. He added crime to crime ; and slew all Numitor's sons, fearing

lest they should attempt to recover their father's kingdom ; and was of such hostile feeling to all kinsfolk that he formed a scheme for murdering the twins. Accordingly he told his two most trusty servants to take the infants and drown them in the river Tiber. Now it happened that the Tiber had overflowed its banks, and the servants could not get as far as the main channel. Exposing the babes therefore in the shallow flood, they went back home, and, believing that the boys would soon perish, told many lies about the manner of their death. But the babes, strange to tell, were for a time fed by a she-wolf ; and eventually a shepherd, named Faustulus, keeper of the king's herds, found the exposed twins, and gave them to his wife Larentia to bring up. Now Faustulus had been told that two of Numitor's grandchildren had been exposed by order of Amulius, and from the beginning he had hopes that the royal offspring were being brought up in his own house. By degrees the whole truth came to light ; and Romulus and Remus, when told the truth about their parentage, as soon as they were grown to manhood, took vengeance on Amulius and restored the kingdom of Alba to Numitor.

VIII. *INDIRECT COMMAND and PETITION*

VERBS OF PERMITTING, DECIDING, PERSUADING, ETC.

Indirect Commands and Petitions are generally expressed in Latin by a Subjunctive Clause introduced by *Ut* or *Ne*, as :

Imperavit (orāvit, &c.) ne filius iret. He commanded (begged, &c.) that his son should not go.

NOTE. The subjunctive clause is really Final, and expresses the Purpose of the Commanding or Begging : hence the Negative is *Ne*.

But the Verbs *Iubeo* and *Veto* prefer the Present Infinitive.

Remember that for 'to order *not*' to do a thing *Impero ne* or *Veto* may be used ; but *Iubeo non* is not good Latin.

Remember also to write *Neu* or *Neve* in place of *Et ne* ; (not *Nec* or *Neque*, which are the equivalent of *Et non*).

Verbs of Permitting or Allowing (*Permitto*, *Sino*, &c.) take

indifferently either the Subjunctive with *Ut*, or the Infinitive ; except *Patior*, which prefers the Infinitive.

Verbs of Deciding or Resolving or Decreeing (*Statuo, Constituo, Decerno*, &c.) take the Subjunctive with *Ut* (negative *Ne*) when referring to the acts of another, but the Infinitive when referring to a man's own acts ; e. g. :

Constituit ut filius domum rediret. He decided that his son should return home ; but :

Constituit domum redire. He decided to return home.

The Verb *Persuade* is used in English with two distinct meanings ; sometimes it means to prevail on any one to *believe* a fact, and sometimes to prevail on any one to *do* a thing. So in Latin the Verbs *Suadeo, Persuadeo*, and *Moneo*, are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive if they introduce an Indirect Statement, but by *Ut* or *Ne* with Subjunctive if they introduce an Indirect Command, e. g. :

I persuaded him *that* the sun is larger than the moon. *Persuasi ei solem maiorem esse quam lunam ; but :*

I persuaded him *to* go back to his parents. *Persuasi ei ut ad parentes rediret.*

Exercise 22 (A)

1. The townsfolk begged Caesar to spare them.
2. Labienus ordered his men not to leave the camp.
3. He contrived (*efficio*) that no one should know.
4. I entreated him not to climb the mountain without a guide, and not to remain there after sundown.
5. He would not allow me to walk through his garden.
6. He decided that his son should become a soldier.
7. He decided to return to Naples with all possible speed.
8. You cannot persuade me that you are wiser than your father.
9. I could not persuade him to return to his parents.
10. We urged him not to tell any one what he had heard.
11. Phaethon desired to be lifted up into his father's chariot.
12. Caesar gave orders to his men not to throw back any missile at all at the enemy.

Exercise 23 (B)

1. Are we not persuaded that Britons will never be conquered in this war?

2. We warned him that the bridges were not very safe, and persuaded him to go by some other route.

3. He was persuaded to return home earlier than he had intended, in order to see his grandson.

4. The Senate resolved that ambassadors should be sent to ask what was the meaning of these repeated (*tot*) insults.

5. He made a long speech without persuading any one to believe him.

6. Although persuaded that what he said was false, I nevertheless pretended to believe him.

7. I have urged him to come and see me to-morrow, but doubt whether I can persuade him.

8. At length the enemy sounded a retreat. On hearing this the general resolved to advance no further that day, and bade his men also retire.

9. I beg you to reflect daily that angry passion (*iracundia*) must be resisted.

10. When the Athenians resolved to go on board their ships, they stoned (*lapidibus obruere*) one Cyrsilus, who tried to persuade them to remain in the city.

11. Themistocles told his colleagues beforehand (*praedico*) not to dismiss the Lacedaemonian envoys before he himself was sent back.

12. Pompey had told his men beforehand to receive Caesar's charge, and not to move from their position.

Exercise 24 (C)

The next day multitudes assembled in the scene of the massacre, the upper market-place; and among the wailings for the dead were heard but half-suppressed execrations and menaces against the cruel Florus. The chief heads of the city with the priests were in the greatest alarm; they tore their robes, rushed among the people, addressed them individually with the most earnest entreaties not again to provoke the anger of the governor. The populace, partly out of respect, partly out of fear, quietly dispersed. Florus and his satellites alone

were grieved at this pacification ; he determined if possible to renew these profitable tumults. He sent for the priests and leaders, and commanded them, as the last proof of their submission, to go forth and receive with the utmost cordiality two cohorts of troops who were advancing from Caesarea. The priests assembled the people in the temple, made known the orders of Florus, and exhorted them to obedience. The more turbulent did not disguise their seditious intentions. Then all the priesthood, the Levites, the musicians and singers in their sacred vestments, fell upon their knees and supplicated the people that they would not bring down certain ruin on the whole city, or give excuse to the rapacious plunderer to profane the Holy Place, and pillage the sacred treasures of God. The priests of the highest rank, with robes rent and ashes on their heads, went about calling on the most influential by name, and urging with the most solemn vehemence that, however degrading the submission to the commands of Florus, it was a trifling sacrifice, if it might avert the desolation of the city and all the horrors of war.

(MILMAN, *History of the Jews.*)

IX. DIRECT QUESTIONS

Direct Questions in Latin are sometimes asked in words identical with Direct Statements, the difference being marked only by the tone of voice in speaking, and the note of interrogation in writing. But more often the Question is marked by the use of :

(1) An interrogative *Word*, as *Quis?* Who? *Ubi?* Where? *Quando?* When?

(Note.—When? (interrogative) is always *Quando* in Latin, never *Cum*.)

(2) An interrogative *Particle*. The interrogative Particles are :

Nonne, expecting the answer 'Yes'.

Num, expecting the answer 'No'.

-ne, used in questions asked for information (i. e. questions in which there is no indication what answer is expected).

NOTE 1. When a question is introduced by a Word which is itself interrogative (as *Quis* or *Quando*), the beginner must be careful not to use an interrogative particle *as well*.

NOTE 2. It is important not to confuse the *expected* answer with the *correct* answer (which has nothing to do with the case). If the question contains a negative, we may generally be sure that the *expected* answer is in the affirmative, e.g. 'Are *not* Abana and Pharpar better than all the waters of Israel?' and 'Is *not* this the carpenter's son?' are clearly questions which expect the answer Yes; and if any one were to ask, 'Is *not* the moon larger than the sun?' we should gather from the form of his question that he *expected* the answer 'Yes', although it would be wrong.

All such questions will in Latin begin with *Nonne*.

On the other hand, if the question contains no negative, it may expect the answer 'No', or it may be asked for information; common sense, or the context, will generally decide; e.g. Am I God, to kill and to make alive? clearly expects the answer 'No'; while, Is your master at home? is asked for information.

NOTE 3. *-ne* is an enclitic, i.e. it cannot stand by itself, or first in the sentence, but should be tacked on (like *-que*) to the first word in the sentence; and this should be an important word, preferably a verb. (But for the sake of euphony it should not follow another short *-e*.)

NOTE 4. Latin has no real equivalents for the English 'Yes' and 'No'. 'Yes' is generally expressed by simply repeating the verb; 'No' by repeating the verb with *Non*.

Audistine? Have you heard? Audiui, Yes. Non audiui, No.

We also sometimes find Etiam, ita, ita vero, ita plane, or the verb aio, with the meaning of 'Yes'; and Minime, haudquaquam, nequaquam, or the verb nego, with the meaning of 'No'.

DOUBLE QUESTIONS are those which embrace two (or more) alternatives, as 'Do you prefer to learn or to leave?' and they are translated in Latin by Utrum . . . an, *-ne* . . . an, Utrum . . . annon.

EXAMPLES OF DIRECT QUESTIONS

SINGLE

Nonne canis lupo simillimus est? Is not a dog very like a wolf? (Yes.)

Num tristes sumus? Are we downhearted? (No.)

Poterasne flumen transire? Could you cross the river? (Uncertain.)

Quot sunt hostes? Quid faciunt? Quod oppidum volunt perdere? How many are the enemy? What are they doing? What town do they wish to destroy?

Note the difference between What? substantival (Quid) and What? adjectival (Quod).

DOUBLE

Utrum haec vera sunt an falsa ? Is this true or false ?

Numamicus(or, Amicusne) an inimicusest ? Is he friend or foe ?

Note. Sometimes the particle in the first alternative is omitted altogether.

Exercise 25 (A)

1. How many altars were there in that temple ?
2. Are there not twenty-four hours in one day ?
3. Do you wish to come back, or not ?
4. Surely you do not want to stay at home ?
5. Are not two sparrows sold for a farthing ? (*as*, or *quadrans* ; abl. case).
6. Of what quality are the enemy's reinforcements ?
7. Are not our soldiers brave ? Have they ever feared the enemy ?
8. Did this man sin or his parents ?
9. Have we not seen it with our own eyes, and heard it with our ears ?
10. When do you think the war will end ?

Exercise 26 (B)

1. Has our state so far received any harm at the hands of the enemy ?
2. Do you think that a deserter is to be believed rather than a friend ?
3. How is it that thou hast found it so quickly, my son ?
4. Is there room in thy father's house for us to lodge in ?
5. Do you prefer living in the country or in town ?
6. Then they called the damsel and said unto her, ' Wilt thou go with this man ? ' and she said, ' I will go '.
7. The kings of the earth, from whom do they receive tribute, from their sons, or from strangers ?
8. Do you intend to do what I told you, or not ?
9. Is there any man who can say that he never did anything of which he was ashamed ?
10. If any man have a hundred sheep, and one of them be gone astray, doth he not leave the ninety and nine, and go unto the mountains, and seek that which is gone astray ?

Exercise 27 (C)

(A LETTER TO A FRIEND)

A certain person was chiding his son in my presence for being somewhat too extravagant in his purchases of horses and dogs. When the young man had left us, I said to him, 'Come now! have *you* never done what might have been rebuked by *your* father? *Have* done so, do I say? Don't you sometimes *now* do that which your son, if he were suddenly turned into your father and you into his son, might reprehend with the like severity? Are not all men led by some error or other? Does not one man indulge himself in one respect, and another in another?' Admonished by this example of undue severity, I have, in accordance with our mutual affection, thus written to you, lest you too should at any time treat your son too sharply and rudely. Reflect, not only that he is a boy, but that you have been one, and so use this your position of father, as to remember that you are both a man and the father of a man.

X. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

When the Direct Question, 'What time is it?' is reported in the form 'I asked *what time it was*', the 'what time it was' is called an INDIRECT Question.

Indirect Questions are thus Substantive Clauses, and may be either subjects or objects of a Verb. Most commonly they are introduced by some verb of asking, knowing, wondering, &c. as :

We wondered why he did it.

I asked him who he was.

They know not what they do.

In Latin, the Verb in the Indirect Question *is always in the subjunctive mood*. A Future subjunctive is supplied (when required) by the Periphrastic Conjugation, i. e. the Future Participle of the verb, combined with the Subjunctive of the verb *sum*, e. g. :

Nescimus quid facturi sint. We know not what they will do (are going to do).

Nesciebamus quid facturi essent. We knew not what they would do (were going to do).

If the verb is passive, it will be necessary to use a further periphrasis, and turn the sentence by 'futurum sit ut' or 'futurum esset ut', followed by the present or imperfect subjunctive, as:

We were doubting whether the fortress would be captured.

Dubitabamus num futurum esset ut castellum caperetur (lit. whether it was about to be that, &c.).

The Interrogative Particles are the same as in Direct Questions, except that in Double Questions *necne* is generally used instead of *annon*. It must also be noted that 'if' and 'whether' introducing a question are to be translated by *num* in Single Questions, and by *num . . . an*, or *utrum . . . an*, in Double Questions. (The Latin for 'if' meaning 'whether' is never *si*.)

NOTE 1. It occasionally happens that a subordinate clause may be regarded either as Interrogative or Relative; e.g. in 'Tell me what you heard' the 'what you heard' is Interrogative if it is indirect for 'what did you hear?', but Relative if the meaning is 'Tell me *the things which* you heard'. If it is the former, the Latin will be 'Dic mihi quae audiveris'; if the latter, we write 'Dic mihi ea quae audivisti'.

NOTE 2. 'Whether . . . or', meaning 'No matter whether . . . or', is 'Sive . . . sive' (or 'Seu . . . seu'), with *Indicative*. Beware of confusing this with the 'Whether . . . or' of Dependent Questions, e.g.:

I know not whether this is true or false; but whether true or false, it does not trouble me.

Utrum haec vera *sint* an falsa, nescio; sed sive vera SUNT seu falsa, nullo modo me movent.

Exercise 28 (A)

1. Tell me what you saw.
2. Ask him when he is coming.
3. I asked him how he did it.
4. I did not know what you wanted.
5. Can any one tell me where I am?
6. I want to know where you are going.
7. Do you know which of the two sisters is the elder?
8. It is doubtful if they will ever return.
9. We knew neither when you started nor where you were going.

10. I did not know what was the best thing to do.
11. Do you wish to know why I avoided you ?
12. We were not told whether we were to remain or not.
13. I was wondering if it was possible.
14. Tell me where you intend to start from.
15. We do not know how long he is likely to remain in France.

Exercise 29 (B)

1. Can any one tell me who was the first to use bow and arrows ?
2. With anxious mind he pondered what a woman in her frenzy could do.
3. The wind bloweth where it listeth, and no man knoweth whence it cometh nor whither it goeth.
4. When asked if he could inform the House (*senatus*) how it fared with the army in Africa, he replied in the negative.
5. What I have said, I have said ; do not now ask what I said.
6. I asked him what he would have done if he had been there.
7. We know neither the day nor the month in which he is likely to return.
8. When asked how old he was (how many years he had), the boy said he was not so old as the master supposed.
9. It is no easy matter to find out whether a man is honest or not.
10. I do not know which is worse, you or your brother.
11. The prisoners were only asked whether they had ever done anything to benefit the state or not.
12. I asked him what he thought his father would have done.
13. We do not know whether you did it or not ; but whether you did it or not, you will pay the penalty.
14. I asked him whether his son Caius was at the front ; he said he did not know.

Exercise 30 (C)

When Diagoras, the notorious atheist, visited Samothrace, and a friend asked him, ' You who think that the gods pay no heed to the affairs of men, do you not see from all these painted

votive-tablets, how many men have by means of vows escaped the fury of a storm and come safe to harbour?' 'So be it,' he replied, 'but there are no pictures of those who have made shipwreck, and perished in the sea.' Again, when on a voyage some fellow-passengers, greatly alarmed by the rough weather, declared that their troubles were come upon them not without reason, seeing that they had taken *him* on board, he pointed to a number of other ships that were in difficulties on the same voyage, and asked whether they supposed that they also had a Diagoras among their passengers.

The truth of the matter is, that so far as good or bad luck is concerned, it makes not the slightest difference what sort of a man you are, or what sort of a life you have lived.

Exercise 31 (C)

CICERO WRITES TO HIS FRIEND TREBATIUS

Cicero to Trebatius. Greeting.

I have long been in ignorance of what you are doing. You write nothing to me and I have not written to you these two months. As you were not with my brother Quintus, I did not know where to send, nor to whom I could entrust a letter.

I am anxious to hear what you are doing and where you intend to pass the winter; I *hope* with Caesar, but I have not ventured to write to him on account of his mourning. I have, however, written to Balbus. There is no reason why you should hurry here. But you are not lacking in resource (*consilium*). I am anxious to hear what you have decided on. There is here a certain Cn. Cornelius, a friend of yours. He, because he knows that I am a friend of yours, often asks me to dinner. So far, I have not been able to accept; but his kindness is gratifying. Farewell.

Rome, Sept. 29.

Exercise 32 (C)

A GENERAL ADDRESSES A MEETING OF HIS COUNTRYMEN
BEFORE LEAVING FOR THE FRONT

I beseech you to believe that whatever I write to the Senate or to you, is the truth, and not by ready credence to foster rumours which no one will stand up to vouch for. In times like

the present, no one so entirely scorns Rumour that his spirits may not be damped thereby. In all social gatherings¹ and dinner-parties there are men who are ready to lead armies against the enemy ; who know where a camp ought to be pitched, what places ought to be occupied by garrisons, when and by what passes the enemy's territory ought to be invaded, where store-houses ought to be placed, by what route on land or sea supplies ought to be brought up, when it is well to give battle to the enemy, and when it is better to sit quiet. And not only do they decide what ought to be done, but if anything is attempted in any other way than they themselves deemed right, they both accuse and abuse the general as though he were a defendant in court.²

XI. ABSTRACT EXPRESSIONS

Latin is generally more simple and less abstract than English.

Examples :

I inquired the date of his arrival. *Rogavi quando advenisset.*
 I failed to see the motive of this behaviour. *Nesciebam quo consilio haec fecisset.*

Caesar wished to ascertain the nature of the island and the numbers of the enemy. *Caesar cognoscere voluit qualis esset insula, et quot essent hostes.*

Exercise 33 (A)

1. The general wished to discover the position of the enemy's camp.
2. We understood his design in leaving the city.
3. Hannibal was unwilling to inform the citizens of his decision.
4. He had gone, and nobody knew the date of his departure.
5. Caesar did not know the distance of the island from Gaul.
6. What was your motive for doing this ?
7. Having ascertained the size and nature of the island, he returned home.
8. We had heard that certain ships had sailed from Spain, but we knew neither their number nor their destination.

¹ *circulus*.

² *veluti dicta die*.

9. Knowing the character of the man, I refused to comply with his request.

10. The position of the enemy's mine (*cuniculus*) was now clear.

11. All the world hates ingratitude.

Exercise 34 (B)

1. Do you consider it your duty to fight for your country, whether right or wrong ?

2. Ignorant of the events of the last few days, Catiline returned to Rome.

3. Since the disposition of the enemy's forces remained a mystery, the general resolved on a reconnaissance by spies during the night.

4. A few, from motives of shame, and to avoid the imputation of cowardice, decided on keeping their position.

5. Under-instruction may be a bad thing, but I am inclined to think that over-instruction may be a worse.

6. On matters of this kind I will not now give you any warning ; it is too late, and you may remember that on various occasions I have given you most careful advice.

7. We have had no information as yet, either as to our destination, or the date of our departure.

8. His threats are most alarming, his actual dealings of the mildest description.

9. Inquiry by Caesar into the nature, number, and military efficiency of the tribes who had taken the field, elicited the following information.

10. They count it a sacred duty to observe the ties of hospitality, protecting from abuse any stranger, no matter what the object of his visit, and holding his person sacred.

11. Among the Germans open brigandage, provided its victims were not fellow-tribesmen, carried with it no disgrace ; rather was it held up to admiration as a natural outlet for the activities of youth, and a useful remedy against sloth.

Exercise 35 (C)

In short, every rumour tended to increase the apprehension among the insurgents, that the King's vengeance had only been delayed in order that it might fall more certain and more heavy.

Morton endeavoured to fortify the minds of the common people by pointing out the probable exaggeration of these reports, and by reminding them of the strength of their own situation, with an unfordable river in front, only passable by a long and narrow bridge. He called to their remembrance their victory over Claverhouse when their numbers were few, and then much worse disciplined and appointed for battle than now; showed them that the ground on which they lay afforded, by its undulation, and the thickets which intersected it, considerable protection against artillery, and even against cavalry, if stoutly defended; and that their safety, in fact, depended on their spirit and resolution.

(SIR WALTER SCOTT.)

XII. FINAL CLAUSES

Final Clauses (i. e. clauses expressing a purpose or end-in-view) are commonly introduced by *ut* when positive and by *ne* when negative, and the verb is *always in the subjunctive*. (The Infinitive, so frequently used to express a Purpose in English, *must never* be so used in Latin.)

The TENSE of the verb in the Final clause depends on the tense of the Principal verb, and the rule is that Primary tenses are followed by the *Present* subjunctive and Historic tenses by the *Imperfect*; but if the student will first recast the sentence into the 'In order that' form *in English*, all difficulty as to the tense will at once disappear; e. g. if we turn

'She went to the cupboard *to get* her dog a bone' into the form

'She went to the cupboard *in order that she might get* her dog a bone',

the word *might* at once makes it clear that the *Imperfect* subjunctive is the correct tense to use.

When the Final Clause is *negative*, it must begin with the word *ne* (lest); e. g.:

In order that nobody . . . *ne quis* (lest anybody),

In order that never . . . *ne unquam*, or *ne quando* (lest ever),

In order that nowhere . . . *necubi* (lest anywhere), &c.

NOTE. But note carefully that if there is a *Comparative* in the clause, *In order that* must be translated, not by *Ut* but by *Quo*, e. g.:

In order to travel *faster* I bought a horse. *Quo celerius iter facerem, equum emi.*

Exercise 36 (A)

1. I am going home to see my parents.
2. Cicero returned to the city, to stand for the Consulship.
3. In order not to be seen by the guards, they hid themselves in a temple.
4. The army marched with all speed, in order to attack the enemy unprepared.
5. To prevent the horse escaping, he shut the gate.
6. In order that nobody should leave the city, all the gates were guarded.
7. Do you think that the slave is telling lies to save his master?
8. In order to be more easily recognized by his men, he threw off his helmet.
9. To tell the truth, I stayed at home in order not to see the king that day.
10. The old woman went to the cupboard to get a bone for her dog.
11. In order to reach home sooner, he rose from his bed at daybreak.
12. We ought to eat to live; there are two boys here who seem to live to eat.

Exercise 37 (B)

1. In order that none of the scouts should be followed by the enemy, the cavalry cut down the bridge.
2. To prove that my enemies are lying, I will return to the city at once.
3. He forgave his enemies, in order that he might himself be forgiven afterwards.
4. To parley with thee are we come.
5. For this reason have I foretold to you all these things, in order that when they have come to pass ye may believe.
6. Within a fortnight the enemy had arrived with all their forces to besiege our city.
7. That no one might believe I had failed (*desum*) a friend

when in danger (use *periclitor*) I returned with all possible speed to Rome.

8. Before this feast the Jews thoroughly search their houses (say, each his own house) in order that there may not be a bit of bread remaining anywhere.

9. Caesar made it his object (use *operam dare*) to keep Dumnorix loyal, but none the less to ascertain all his plans.

10. Alas for the times! alas for the ways of men! what crime will not the poor commit to become rich, or the rich to become richer?

Exercise 38 (C)

There was a marsh of no great size between our army and the enemy, and our men stood ready to arms, in order to attack the enemy at a disadvantage (*impeditus*) in case they attempted to cross. When they refused to risk the passage, our general withdrew his forces to camp. At once the enemy made for the Aisne (Axona) which flowed in the rear of our lines. Finding a ford, they endeavoured to lead a part of their forces across the river, their object being to storm the blockhouse (*castellum*) there held by Q. Titurius, and then cut down the bridge; or, failing that (say, if they should have been less able) to lay waste the lands of the Belgae, which were so invaluable to us (use *Pred. Dat.*) in the prosecution of the war, and so to sever our communications (say, prevent us from supplies).

XIII. CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES

are clauses denoting a Consequence or Result, as:

He is so tired *that he cannot work*.

In Consecutive clauses, as in Final clauses, the Verb is always in the *subjunctive mood*, but the *tense* is determined entirely by the meaning. There is no reason, as in Final clauses, why Primary tenses should follow Primary, or Historic Historic. In Consecutive sentences a principal verb may be followed by a verb in *any* tense (past, present, or future), according to the meaning, e. g. :

He was so badly wounded (Tam graviter vulneratus est)	that he died	ut mortuus sit	(Aorist).
	that he was dying	ut moreretur	(Imperf.)
	that he is dying	ut moriatur	(Pres.)
	that he is dead	ut iam mortuus	(Perf.)
	already	sit	
	that he will die	ut mox mori-	(Future)
	soon	turus sit	
	that he had died	ut mortuus esset	(Pluperf.)
	before we arrived	antequam, &c.	

The only question likely to arise is whether the Imperfect or the Perfect is the better tense to express a consequence in past time; and here it should be noted that the Perfect (Aorist) is often used to express a *momentary act*, while the Imperfect expresses a *continued action or state*, e. g.:

(The soldier was so badly wounded) that he fell and lay (was lying) on the ground. Ut conciderit (Perf.) et humi iaceret (Imperf.).

More frequently, however, the distinction between these two tenses as used in Consecutive Clauses, is that the Imperfect represents the consequence as merely *contemplated* or *in prospect*, while the Perfect represents it as *actually occurring*, e. g.:

Adeo iratus sum ut eum graviter punirem. I was angry enough to punish him severely.

Adeo iratus sum ut eum graviter punierim. I was so angry that I punished him severely.

NOTE ON THE TRANSLATION OF 'SO'

There are several words in Latin which may be said to mean 'so', but they should be used with discrimination. The commonest of them are Tam, Adeo, Ita, Sic. Of these Tam is generally used to modify adjectives or adverbs, while Adeo, Ita, and Sic are more often used with verbs.

We may discern a similar distinction between the English words *very* and *much* as used by good authors, *very* being used to modify adjectives, and participles in which the adjectival notion predominates, *much* to modify verbs and participles in which the verbal notion is predominant. Thus we say 'very glad', but never 'much glad', because 'glad' is an adjective; on the other hand we say 'much quoted', 'much admired', because 'quoted' and 'admired' are participles in which the verbal notion predominates. We may indeed use *very* with participles which have a purely adjectival force, as 'very pleased', or 'very tired'; but few good writers or speakers would use the expression 'very amused', because the verbal notion in 'amused' is predominant over the adjectival; and nobody would say 'very quoted' or 'very admired'.

Exercise 39 (A)

1. I am so tired that I cannot work.
2. So great a storm had arisen that all the ships were in danger.
3. The slave had shown himself so faithful that his master gave him his freedom.
4. Our men are fighting so bravely that they will soon conquer the enemy.
5. Were you foolish enough to be deceived?
6. The journey from London¹ to York² is so long that we cannot accomplish it in two days.
7. There were so many roses in the garden that nobody could count them.
8. I have told you this so often that I refuse (use *nolo*) to say it again.
9. The waves were so great as to fill the ship.
10. So skilful a general was he that he was never defeated.

Exercise 40 (B)

1. He is so lazy that he will not work.
2. The city is so large and so strong that we believe it will never be taken.
3. Socrates said that no one was so ignorant as not to know that the sun and moon were gods.
4. Such was their terror of the Germans that all the inhabitants were about to depart.
5. Such was their fear of the enemy that they would have departed if they could.
6. He so conducted himself as to become an object of hatred to all men.
7. He so conducted himself that he became consul in his forty-first year.
8. There is no work so arduous that it cannot be accomplished by patience and perseverance.
9. The sailors worked with such zeal that all the ships were repaired within a fortnight.
10. Caius said he was so deeply in debt that he was ready to join a conspiracy.

¹ Londinium.² Eboracum.

II. The army was hard pressed, insomuch that for several days the soldiers went without food, and with difficulty endured the extremities of hunger.

Exercise 41 (C)

During the next few years the Roman Republic was waging war with success against the Sabines. One of the Sabine nobles, named Attus Clausus, so far disapproved of the war, that he left his own country and migrated to Rome. Being there admitted into the Patricians, he became the founder of the famous Claudian family. After four successive consulships, Publicola died in such poverty that he was buried at the public expense, and the Roman matrons put on mourning for him. Then Mamilius induced the thirty Latin cities to declare war on Rome in Tarquin's cause. So great did the danger seem, that the Romans deemed it necessary to have a single ruler instead of two consuls, and elected Spurius Lartius to preside over the state under the title of Dictator.

XIV. FINAL AND CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES (MIXED)

The following Exercises contain examples of Final and Consecutive Clauses mixed together. Notice that a Final Negative Clause *always* begins with *ne*, while a Consecutive Clause *never* does so. Hence write

	<i>in Final Clauses :</i>	<i>in Consecutive Clauses :</i>
That not	Ne	Ut non
That never	Ne unquam	Ut nunquam
That nowhere	Necubi	Ut nusquam
That nohow	Ne quo modo	Ut nullo modo
That nobody	Ne quis	Ut nemo
That no . . .	Ne ullus . . .	Ut nullus

It must be remembered that Final Clauses dwell on the Motive or Purpose of an action, as distinct from its actual Result ; while Consecutive Clauses deal only with the Result or Tendency of an act, as apart from the Motive which inspired it. Occasionally

we find in English a sentence which seems to blend and combine the Final with the Consecutive—the result, no doubt, of a confusion of constructions.

Thus a confusion of :

Punish him severely so that he *may* never steal again (Final) ;
with

Punish him *so* severely that he *will* never steal again (Consecutive), becomes

Punish him *so* severely that he *may* never steal again.

(In translating such a sentence into Latin the student may write *Ne unquam* or *Ut nunquam*, according as he thinks the Final or the Consecutive notion predominates.)

Thus we read in the Psalms : ‘ *So* teach us to number our days that we *may* apply our hearts unto wisdom ’ ; and in the Gospels : ‘ Let your light *so* shine before men that they *may* see your good works ’, &c.

Notice the phrases :

Non is sum ut (more frequently qui) periculo deterrear. I am not the man to be frightened by the danger.

Tantum abest ut hoc faciam, ut . . . So far am I from doing this, that . . .

Exercise 42 (A)

1. Did you not send a man armed with a sword to kill Claudius ?

2. They were so cowardly that they never resisted.

3. The road is so long that I fear to go alone.

4. So as not to be seen, we attempted to escape in the middle of the night.

5. To deceive the Romans, Hannibal lit many fires near his camp.

6. Do you think you are strong enough to drive the enemy back without reinforcements ?

7. He was so badly wounded that he died within two hours.

8. He told many lies to avoid being punished.

9. The ditch was made of such depth that no one could cross it.

10. The ditch was made of such depth that no one might cross it.

Exercise 43 (B)

1. Let us so fight that our enemies may never again think us cowardly and degenerate.

2. To pay my debts I had already sold the best horse I had.

3. You are not the man, Catiline, for a sense of shame to keep from evil deeds.

4. The Germans, having advanced with large forces to besiege the most beautiful city of the Gauls, were at length driven back as far as the river Marne.

5. Damon promised to return in time, so that no one might think he had failed a friend in danger (use *periclitor*).

6. The boy came to such a pitch of folly that he did not trust even his own father.

7. I set out for Italy on the 2nd of April, in order to see Rome and Naples ; Florence I had seen already.

8. This speech he made with voice and face so calm and steadfast that he seemed to be departing not from life, but from one dwelling-place to another.

9. The Spartan mother, on hearing that her son had been slain in battle, said, ' For this reason had I brought him forth, that there might be one who would not hesitate to face (*occumbere*) death for his country's sake ! '

10. So far am I from believing it true, that I do not think it even probable.

11. So teach us to number our days, that we may apply our hearts unto wisdom.

Exercise 44 (C)

Robert Bruce, the famous Scottish leader, like many of his contemporaries, believed in omens. At the time of his disasters, he had retired one day into a barn, to take rest. He lay on some straw, and gave himself up to his sad reflections. So decisively had he been beaten more than once by King Edward the First, that he was giving up all hope of being able to resist the English any longer, and was thinking of going to Palestine, to fight against the Saracens. While he thus pondered, his eye was

attracted by the exertions of a spider which, hanging from its thread, was endeavouring to fix it on a beam from which to stretch its web. He became interested in the perseverance with which the insect renewed its attempts; and the idea occurred to him that he would decide what he would do according to the success or failure of the spider. At the seventh attempt the insect achieved its aim, and Bruce resolved to try his fortune once more. After various strange adventures and bloody encounters, he succeeded in driving the English out of Scotland. The example of perseverance shown to Robert Bruce by the spider is so firmly believed by his descendants, that, even to the present day, it has been held by them ungrateful and unlucky to kill one of these insects.

XV. TIME AT WHICH, DURING WHICH, WITHIN WHICH, &c.

The TIME DURING WHICH any action lasts (or TIME HOW LONG) is expressed in Latin by the *Accusative* Case (without preposition), as

Nonaginta annos vixit. He lived for ninety years.

Triginta annos natus est. He is thirty years old.

Tres annos Romam cotidie ibam. During three years I used to go to Rome daily.

But it must be carefully noted that if the verb in such a sentence as the last is *negatived*, e. g. 'I have not been to Rome for these two years', then to the Roman mind we have no longer an instance of the Time during which an action lasts, but rather of the interval within which it is suspended, and to express this they used the *Ablative*:

Duobus his annis Romam non veni.

The point of TIME AT WHICH and the Interval of TIME WITHIN WHICH anything takes place, are both expressed by the *ablative*. Instances are:

Time at which:

Quadragesimo anno mortem obiit. He died in his fortieth year.

Hieme noctes longae sunt. In winter the nights are long.

Hoc anno consul fuit Caesar. In this year Caesar was Consul.

Time within which :

Quicquid fiet, biduo sciemus. Whatever happens we shall know within two days.

Iter duobus mensibus confecit. He finished the journey in two months.

TIME HOW LONG HENCE OR AGO, or TIME HOW LONG BEFORE OR AFTER some other event, is expressed :

(1) By *abhinc* (ago) with accusative (occasionally ablative), as Annos abhinc tredecim, thirteen years ago.

(2) By the ablative with *ante* or *post* used adverbially, or

(3) By *ante* or *post* used as a preposition governing the accusative.

The numeral may be either cardinal or ordinal, but is more often ordinal. Instance : He departed five days afterwards.

Discessit quinto post die, <i>or</i>	} in which <i>post</i> is an adverb.
quinque post diebus,	
<i>or</i> quintum post diem,	} in which <i>post</i> is a preposition.
<i>or</i> quinque post dies	

It will be noticed that a similar latitude is admissible in English, as we say almost indifferently 'on the fifth day after', 'five days afterwards', 'after the fifth day', 'after five days'.

Exercise 45 (A)

1. He lived fifty-four years ; he had reigned for twenty-one.
2. Cleon declared that he would defeat the enemy within twenty days.
3. The nights are long in winter, short in summer.
4. For three years he was ill, and stayed at home.
5. For these (or, the last) nine months he has not been ill even for one day.
6. The general hoped to reach the enemy's city in three days.
7. They crossed the river ten days ago.
8. He reached home on the tenth day ; two days afterwards he was killed.

48 Time At Which, During Which, Within Which

9. He had lived for fifteen years in London, but the greater part of his life abroad ; he died in his eightieth year.

10. Pompey arrived with his army towards (*sub* with accusative) night ; Caesar had crossed the river three days before.

Exercise 46 (B)

1. I am greatly grieved that you have not written to me these two months.

2. For three hours we were followed by pirates ; after sundown we did not see them again.

3. I have now been ill for more than a fortnight.

4. Ten years ago who had suspected that all the nations of Europe would be embroiled (use *versari*) in so terrible a war ?

5. Setting out at ten o'clock (say, at the fourth hour), I hoped to be back before midnight.

6. Our state has had no enemy these twenty years.

7. They say that the Cardinal, ill and worn out with work, reached Leicester¹ on the 25th November, and died three days afterwards.

8. He says he has not seen his brother for two years.

9. Four years ago he was a lieutenant in France ; for already eighteen months he has held the highest office at home.

10. The poet, born in London² ninety years ago, died in Florence³ in his 84th year.

Exercise 47 (C)

William Shakespeare, the greatest of all poets, was born at Stratford on the 23rd of April, more than 350 years ago. It is said that when he grew up he lived for some years in the country, and taught in a village school ; he is also said to have spent some time in a lawyer's office. When 18 years old he married one Anne Hathaway, a farmer's daughter, and four years afterwards he left his native town and went to London. Here he found employment as an actor, and at the same time began to write the plays which have made his name famous throughout the world. He was connected with the theatre in London in all for about twenty-five years. During eleven years he did not visit his native town, but he so far prospered in London that at

¹ Ratae.

² Londinium.

³ Florentia.

33 years of age he was able to return to Stratford and purchase and rebuild the house in which he had lived as a boy. One son and two daughters had been born to him ; of whom the boy died at the early age of 12 ; of the daughters one married a certain Dr. Hale, and the other married Thomas Quiney only a few months before her father's last illness. The great poet died on his birthday, the 23rd of April, 1616.

XVI. *EXTENT of SPACE, PLACE, &c.*

Extent of Space, like Duration of Time, is expressed in Latin by the Accusative Case (without Preposition), as :

Quinque *milia* passuum ambulavit. He walked five miles.

Fossa sex *pedes* lata (alta, longa). A ditch six feet wide (deep, long).

Bidui *iter* processimus. We advanced a two days' march.

PLACE TO, FROM, and AT WHICH (WHITHER, WHENCE, and WHERE)

Place *to* which is expressed by the *Accusative* ; in Italiam, to Italy ; Athenas, to Athens.

Place *from* which is expressed by the *Ablative* ; ex Italia, from Italy ; Athenis, from Athens.

Place *at* which is expressed by the *Locative* (of Towns, and occasionally by *ad* with the Accusative), or *in* with the Ablative ; Romae, at Rome ; ad Cannas, at Cannae ; in urbe, in the city.

In every case a preposition is used except with the names of towns, small islands, and the words *Domus*, *Humus*, and *Rus* ; with these *no Preposition* is used, and Place *at* is expressed by the *Locative*. (Note also *Militiae* for 'At the front'.)

(Why was the preposition dropped with towns, &c. ? No doubt from the same tendency which leads us to say 'lunch' instead of 'luncheon', 'bus' instead of 'omnibus', &c., i. e. the tendency to abbreviate for the sake of saving trouble. This abbreviation in English often takes the form of merging a preposition with a noun ; thus we speak of going 'ashore' instead of 'on shore', 'aboard' instead of 'on board', 'afield' instead of 'to the fields' ; and when we speak of 'going home' we drop the

preposition entirely. The Romans were only carrying the same tendency still further when they spoke not only of 'going home' but also of 'going Rome' or 'going' any other town or small island).

Examples:

E Gallia profecti, ad Britanniam quarta hora pervenerunt.
They set out from Gaul and arrived at (reached) Britain at the fourth hour.

Romam eo hodie; cras domum redibo. I go to Rome to-day;
to-morrow I shall return home.

Exercise 48 (A)

1. We have built a wall seven hundred feet long.
2. He departed from Rome three years ago, and now lives at Florence.
3. Having advanced a two days' march, the army reached Naples.
4. Do you not wish to go afield (into the country) to-day?
5. He went away to Tarentum when twelve years old; nor has he returned home for these three years.
6. Caesar was then at Ravenna; he hoped to reach Rome within nine days.
7. Are you willing to come with me a three days' journey to Athens?
8. It is the action of a wise man to walk two miles after dinner.
9. I have in my garden two trees which are fifty feet high.
10. We reached London, which is forty miles distant, within two hours.

Exercise 49 (B)

1. We have already been at Syracuse for three months; we hope to return home within a week.
2. Was I not the first to leave for the country, the last to return to the town?
3. If you ask me where I am going, I am going to the same place as you.

4. In that battle more than five hundred prisoners were captured and led back to Rome.

5. Wheresoever the carcass is, there will the eagles be gathered together.

6. My sister has already been ill for eleven days, but she hopes to be able to return to Florence in a fortnight.

7. If you hurry, you can reach Aduatuca within three hours.

8. Divitiacus had set out to the Senate at Rome to ask for help, but had returned without accomplishing his purpose.

9. Three months ago I took a trip (*navigo*) to Sicily at the beginning of spring, but returned within a week because I heard that my father was ill.

10. They say that J. S. Mill (the well-known author and philosopher) was learning Greek at three, and at eight was teaching his brother and sister.

Exercise 50 (C)

DISBELIEF IN THE GODS

Diogenes the Cynic used to say that Harpalus, who in those days had the reputation of being a most prosperous burglar in Pamphylia, bore witness against the gods, seeing that he retained his good luck for more than fifteen years.

Dionysius, of whom Cicero tells many stories, had robbed the temple of Proserpina at Locri, and was on his way to Syracuse; and finding that favouring winds attended his voyage, he laughingly remarked, 'You see, my friends, how excellent a voyage is granted by the gods to those that break their laws!' and shrewdly drawing his conclusions from the facts observed, he held to his theory for the rest of his life.

On one occasion he put his fleet into a Peloponnesian port, and paying a visit to the temple of Olympian Jupiter, he stole a massive mantle with which the tyrant Hiero had adorned the statue of the god. Herein too he saw fit to scoff, declaring that a mantle of gold was heavy in the summer and cold in the winter; and he put in its place a woollen cloak, saying that that was suitable for every season of the year.

XVII. *The PASSIVE of INTRANSITIVE and DATIVE VERBS*

In English, we do not use an Intransitive verb *passively*, e. g. we say a man sleeps, but we never say a man *is slept*. In Latin also, Intransitive verbs are never used *personally* in the Passive, but they were not infrequently so used *impersonally*, e. g. Latin could say :

Dormitum est ab omnibus. All slept (lit. it was slept by all).
Ventum est ad Britanniam. Britain was reached (lit. it was arrived to Britain).

Eundum est mihi. I must go (there must be a going by me).

Sic itur ad astra. Such is the way to Heaven.

For the purposes of this rule it is important to remember that all *Dative* verbs, e. g. *credo*, *suadeo*, &c., are considered intransitive :

You are believed. *Tibi creditur*.

I am persuaded. *Persuasum est mihi*.

Exercise 51 (A)

1. Daughters are often indulged by their mother.
2. The master was not obeyed by the boys.
3. The rich are envied by the poor.
4. You are more often favoured than I am.
5. Can a slave who has lied so often, be believed ?
6. Sicily was reached in the third watch.
7. It was replied to the envoys that this thing could not be done.
8. I am persuaded that what you say is false.
9. If I am obeyed (fut.), you will be pardoned.
10. The master was persuaded to forgive the slaves.

Exercise 52 (B)

1. Balbus, who as a child was often spared by his father and indulged by his mother, became a selfish and unprincipled man, nor was he of any use either to his family or his fatherland.

2. When appointed a judge, he spared many criminals in order that his own crimes might be forgiven.

3. Under these circumstances, he was persuaded to return to London with all possible speed.

4. An early start was made, and the rampart and trenches were reached before dawn.

5. Although he refuses to take food if kept in prison, he must not be pardoned.

6. Women and children and such citizens as were unarmed were spared, but all the buildings were plundered and burned.

7. The enemy had to be resisted for nearly sixteen hours, and not till after sundown was help brought to the gallant little band of defenders.

8. A man who tells such tales as that, is merely aiming at his own advantage, and is not to be believed.

9. Croesus had supposed that he would be envied for his wealth, but Solon declared that no man should be pronounced happy before his death.

10. Now good-bye ; for as you have to walk and to sleep, so I have to work even till daybreak.

Exercise 53 (C)

A certain boy was envied by his fellows on account of his money, and because he was much favoured and indulged by his master. Angered at this, the other boys determined to bring him into disfavour. Accordingly, while games were going on, they put a sum of money into his coat as it lay on the ground ; and when it was evening and they had returned home, the ring-leader of the plot, whose name was Claudius, accused the innocent boy of having stolen the money. Moreover he urged the boy himself to confess the crime ; ‘ for if you confess that you stole the money ’, he said, ‘ and that you repent, you will no doubt be spared ; whereas if you deny it you will not be believed but will be severely punished.’ But the master said, ‘ I am persuaded that this boy, to whom money is no object, has no wish to steal ; wherefore whatever money has been found in his pocket must be his own.’ And thus not only was the boy not punished, but he also had more money than before.

XVIII. IMPERSONAL VERBS

The construction of the chief Impersonal verbs should be carefully noted.

PIGET, PUDET, ETC.

Piget, pudet, paenitet (it vexes, it shames, it repents),
Taedet atque miseret (it wearies, it pities),
take an accusative of the person and a genitive of the thing.
(Sometimes also they are found with a neuter pronoun or an infinitive as subject.)

Examples :

Pudet eum sceleris. He is ashamed of his crime.

Miseret me captivi. I pity the prisoner.

Taedet nos eadem facere. To do the same things wearies us.

LIBET, LICET, ETC.

Libet and Placet (it pleases), Licet (it is allowed), and Liquet (it is clear) take a dative of the person, and are generally followed by an infinitive.

Examples :

Licet tibi intrare. It is allowed you to enter (or, You may enter).

Libebat mihi scribere. It pleased me to write.

OPORTET

Oportet (it behoves) takes an accusative of the person, and the infinitive (occasionally nominative and subjunctive).

Examples :

Oportet te ire. You ought to go (lit. it behoves you to go).

Oportuit te ire. You ought to have gone (lit. it behoved you to go).

The difference between the Latin and the English idiom in the way of TENSE requires special attention here (as with Debeo), and you must be on your guard against writing 'oportet te ivisse'.

INTEREST and REFERT

Interest (it concerns) takes a genitive of the person or thing concerned, as *Ciceronis interest*, It concerns Cicero ; *Reipublicae interest*, It concerns the country ; but in the case of personal pronouns, as *It concerns me*, it takes (by a curious idiom, of which the origin is not known) the *Ablative Feminine Singular of the Possessive Adjective* (*Interest mea, tua, nostra, &c.*).

'How much' (it concerns) may be expressed either by (1) Adverbs, as *valde, parum*, or (2) Accusatives of Adjectives or Pronouns, as *multum, tantum, quid*, or (3) Genitives (of value) as *magni, parvi, tanti*.

Example :

Pollionis magni interest, mea parvi, scire quid facias. It concerns Pollio much, but me little, to know what you are doing.

Refert also takes the *Ablative Feminine Singular* (*mea, tua, &c.*) but not the genitive ; but the word is perhaps most often used absolutely, i. e. without mention of person. 'How much' is expressed as with *Interest*.

OPUS EST, USUS EST

With *Opus est, Usus est* (there is need), the Person needing is expressed by the Dative, and the thing needed by the Ablative.

Examples :

Opus est mihi libris. I have need of books.

Consuli non usus erat navibus. The consul had no need of ships.

With *Opus est*, the thing needed is also sometimes expressed as the Subject (in the nominative), as *Dux nobis opus est.* We want a leader.

NECESSE EST

Necesse est (it is necessary) either takes the Dative of the person, and the Infinitive, or is followed by the Subjunctive, with or without *Ut*.

Examples :

Necesse est mihi ire. } It is necessary for me to go.
Necesse est (ut) eam. }

FALLIT, IU VAT, DECET, ETC.

Fallit, fugit, praeterit. It escapes the notice of.

Decet, iuvat, dedecet. It becomes, it delights, it ill becomes.

With these verbs the Person is the Direct Object, and in the Accusative.

ATTINET, PERTINET

Attinet and *Pertinet* (it concerns) take an accusative with *ad*.

Example :

Quod ad me attinet. As far as I am concerned.

Verbs denoting states of the weather, &c., as *Pluit*, *Tonat*, *Advesperascit* (it rains, thunders, grows late, &c.), require no special comment.

NOTE 1. Many of the Impersonal verbs which take an infinitive, may also be followed by *ut* with subjunctive, or a Dependent Clause. Such are *placet*, *licet*, *interest*, *accidit*, &c. A liberal use of the Dictionary is the best way to find out constructions.

NOTE 2. As these verbs have no personal subject, the reflexive pronouns *se* and *suus* can only be used when the Impersonal verb is dependent on a Personal one ; as, He said he pitied the prisoner, *Dixit se miserere captivi* (lit. He declared it to pity him of the prisoner).

Exercise 54 (A)

1. He is ashamed of his crime.
2. He will repent his folly.
3. Do you not pity the poor ?
4. I am sick of hearing the same things again and again (*identidem*).
5. You might have gone yesterday ; to-day you may not.
6. It is clear to all that he is mad.
7. Is it your pleasure to return at once ?
8. You ought to remember your parents, and write to them often.
9. She said she was greatly vexed at her stupidity.
10. We ought to have informed the magistrates.
11. I had no need of money.
12. It will be necessary for me to return home to-morrow.
13. It does not escape me that many toils remain.

14. It is of great importance to me that you should be in good health.

15. As far as I am concerned, you may go.

Exercise 55 (B)

1. It is of great importance to me that I should see you as soon as possible.

2. Anger ill becomes old age.

3. Gallio said that those things did not concern him at all.

4. If you repent of your ingratitude (ungrateful mind) you will be forgiven.

5. We believe that whenever it lightens it also thunders.

6. What difference does it make whether he has wished it to be done, or has rejoiced that it is done?

7. It is to the interest of Antony that Balbus, but to our interest that you, should become consul.

8. It by no means (*minime*) becomes an orator to lose his temper, but that he should make pretence (*simulare*) is not unbecoming.

9. Can any one say for certain whether it will rain on the morrow or not?

10. You ought not to have reproached those who repented of their errors.

11. He said he was not ashamed of having done his duty (what he ought).

12. He said that all things were being made ready, which were needful for crossing the river.

13. A discussion was held (*delibero*) in the council as to whether it was the common wish (use *placet*) that the town should be burned or defended.

14. A. I have lost my portmanteau. B. I pity your grief.

A. All my sermons were in it. B. I pity the thief.

Exercise 56 (C)

It delights me to think that in conducting my cases I have always declined not only compacts, presents, and fees, but even trifling 'douceurs'. To be sure it is one's duty to shun what is

dishonourable, not because it is unlawful, but because it is wrong ; yet at the same time it is pleasant to see a thing publicly prohibited which one has never permitted oneself. Probably, nay certainly, the credit of this resolve of mine will be smaller, its fame dimmer, when every one will have to do from necessity what I did of my own accord. Meanwhile, I enjoy real pleasure when some of my friends playfully call me a ' prophet ', others declare that ' a check has been put on my plundering and avarice.'

XIX. *PARTICIPLES and the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE*

The correct use of participles presents many difficulties to the beginner, chiefly from the fact that, except with Deponent verbs, Latin possesses no Past Participle *Active*. The consequence is that sentences with Active Past Participles very frequently have to be recast or ' turned ' before they are put into Latin. E. g. the sentence ' Having murdered his brother he fled from the city ' cannot be translated literally because (in the absence of a Deponent verb) there is no Latin participle meaning ' having killed '. Hence we are driven to recast or ' turn ' the sentence in some other way, e. g. His brother having *been* murdered, he fled, *Fratre interfecto fugit*. Here the words ' *fratre interfecto* ' are in the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE, a construction with which the student is doubtless already familiar. It only remains to warn him that the construction must not be used when the noun or pronoun which he is tempted to put into the Ablative can rightly be regarded as (1) the Subject, or (2) the Object, of the main verb, e. g. :

1. The deserter, having been handed over to the citizens, was put to death. In translating this the beginner may at first sight be tempted to use the Ablative Absolute construction, but a moment's reflection will show him that the word ' deserter ' which he thinks of putting into the Ablative, is nothing else than the *Subject* of the sentence, and *must* therefore be in the Nominative, while the participle for ' having been handed over ' must be made to agree with it, and the sentence will run :

Desertor, civibus traditus, interfectus est.

2. Having captured the deserter they put him to death.

Here the temptation to begin with an Ablative Absolute will be very general ; nevertheless such a sentence as *Desertore capto cives eum interfecerunt* is not permissible. The Latin, briefer and neater than the English, will make the word 'deserter' the *Object* of the main verb, and write simply :

Desertorem captum interfecerunt (they killed the captured deserter).

NOTE 1. From the above it will be clear that before using the Ablative Absolute construction, it is well to ask whether the word you are minded to put into the ablative can be made either the subject or the object of the main verb ; only in case it can be neither the one nor the other should the Ablative Absolute be used.

NOTE 2. The Perfect Participle of Deponents and Semi-deponents is not found in early Latin, and not common in Classical Latin, being restricted to verbs which do not take an object (chiefly verbs of Motion, Growth (as *ortus*, *coortus*, and *natus*), or Death). It is common in later Latin, being used with an Object from Sallust onwards.

Of the following sentences some can be translated literally, by means of a Deponent verb, or of a participle in agreement with the subject or the object ; while others are to be turned by the Ablative Absolute.

Exercise 57 (A)

1. Cicero, having spoken for two hours, at length sat down.

2. Having defeated Hannibal at Zama, Scipio returned from Africa to Rome.

3. Tarquinius, when expelled from Rome, began to tamper with the neighbouring tribes.

4. Kings having been driven from Rome, consuls were created.

5. Servius ordered this notorious thief, when at length captured, to be cast into the Tullianum.

6. A great storm having arisen, many of the ships were damaged (*affligo*).

7. Having repaired their ships, the Romans set sail at daybreak.

8. Having advanced a three days' journey, the messengers returned.

9. Having ascertained the enemy's plans, Fabius set out with all possible speed.

10. Having found his body two days afterwards, we buried it with military honours in the open plain.

In the last Exercise we have shown how Active Participles in English are often turned by Passive Participles in Latin, in case there is no Deponent Verb which suits the meaning. But in the case of INTRANSITIVE verbs this method is no longer possible, as Intransitive verbs *have no Passive*; and the only way to turn 'having slept', 'having arrived' &c., is by means of *Cum* (or a Relative) and the Subjunctive, e. g.

Having slept well, he rose early. *Cum bene dormiisset, mane surrexit.*

We have now mentioned three possible ways of translating into Latin such a sentence as 'having said this, the messenger departed':

1. (Deponent Verb). *Haec locutus, nuntius abiit.*

2. (Ablative Absolute). *His dictis, nuntius abiit.*

3. (*Cum* with Subjunctive). *Cum haec dixisset, nuntius abiit.*

Of these, the first method is possible only if there is a Deponent verb to suit the meaning; the second is available if the verb has an Object, and the third (the construction with *Cum*) is always possible.

In the following Exercise the third method (*Cum* with Subjunctive) should only be used in case neither of the other methods is possible.

Exercise 58 (B)

1. Having advanced three miles, the army halted.

2. Having written the letter, I at once sent it to Cornelius.

3. Having arrived at Naples, I wished to ascend Vesuvius.

4. Having taken possession of Saguntum, he slew the leading men.

5. Having reached Britain about the third hour, Caesar immediately landed his troops.

6. Having seized a sword, he drove the man out of the house.

7. Having climbed the tree, the boy said he could not get down again.

8. Having felled two oaks this morning (*hodie mane*) we will burn them to-morrow.

9. Having walked for a short time in the garden, my uncle used to study (say, study letters) for two hours.

10. Having run for three miles, we were tired.

11. Having discovered the enemy's designs, Caesar threw his forces across the Thames with all speed.

Exercise 59 (C)

These exploits accomplished, and Gaul being in a state of peace, Caesar resolved to start for Britain. Gathering all his ships to a suitable harbour, and obtaining suitable weather, he set sail about the third watch; but, the wind dropping (use *intermitto*), he failed to keep his course, and when day broke he sighted Britain left behind to larboard (*sub sinistra*).

None the less the sailors, by not ceasing from the work of rowing, made (*capio*) the island about the fourth hour of the day. But the barbarians, having heard of the Roman designs, and having espied the ships approaching their shores, sent their cavalry in advance, and following with the remainder of their forces, tried to prevent our men from disembarking.

XX. PARTICIPLES and the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE (*contd.*)

1. You will have noticed that all the sentences in Exercise B began with a Past Participle Active ('Having' done so and so). But as a matter of fact, this is a mode of expression seldom used in English; we far more often (if less correctly) use a PRESENT Participle, with or without a conjunction or preposition, as

Turning to his friends, he spoke as follows;

So *saying*, he departed;

On *hearing* this, she wept.

But whatever form the English takes, we must beware of using a Present Participle in Latin to translate sentences like

the above. The Present Participle in Latin is used only to express action *simultaneous with the action of the Main Verb* ; as *Moriens dulces reminiscitur Argos*. (While) dying he remembers his beloved Argos. (In English we generally add the word ' while ' to the participle in such a case.)

But in the instances given above it is clear that the participle denotes action not simultaneous with, but prior to, the action of the main verb, e. g. when we say ' Turning to his friends he spoke ' we mean that he first turned and then spoke ; and we must be careful in such a case to use a Past, and not a Present, Participle (*Conversus ad amicos, ita dixit*).

2. In Latin we constantly find Participle and Main Verb where in English we have two main verbs joined by a conjunction ; e. g. *Captus interfectus est*, He was caught and put to death. (This is sometimes expressed by saying that Latin *Subordinates* where English *Co-ordinates*.)

3. Participial Clauses, Ablative Absolute or otherwise, are very commonly used in Latin where in English we use a subordinate clause introduced by such words as Since, Though, While, If, &c. ; e. g. *Nocte appropinquante*, Since night was approaching, *Consule Planco*, While Plancus was Consul ; *Teucro duce*, If Teucer is our leader, &c.

Exercise 60 (A)

1. On the death of the father the son became king.
2. In the consulship of Marius and Catulus the Cimbri were defeated.
3. I wrote the letter and started before daybreak.
4. If you are guide, no one will despair (say, you being guide).
5. The soldier, being badly wounded, could not return to the camp.
6. Was not this done at your own suggestion ? (you yourself being author).
7. While Tullius was still writing, Atticus arrived.
8. On seeing a lion, the shepherd ran away.
9. Hauling up the anchors we at once set sail.
10. Let us pay the money and go home.
11. While trying to avoid Scylla we fell into Charybdis.

12. On getting (*nanciscor*) suitable weather, Caesar sailed for Britain.

13. After changing my clothes I will come back to talk with you.

14. The women were panic-stricken, and fled into the temple.

15. As the man resisted I struck him with my sword.

Exercise 61 (B)

1. Starting from Naples, and leaving the hills on our left, we soon reached the island of Capri (*Capreae*).

2. Having besieged Troy for ten years, the Greeks utterly destroyed it.

3. While hunting in the New Forest the king was killed by an arrow.

4. Manlius is said to have slain the Gaul and stripped him of his necklace.

5. If Pleasure be our lord and master (*dominor*), all the greatest virtues must of necessity be in abeyance (*iacere*).

6. Lysander urged that the royal power should be done away with (*dissolvo*), and a leader chosen from all the citizens.

7. Having not yet experienced the sweetness of liberty, the old Romans were willing to have a king over them (*regnari*).

8. Being followed by our cavalry up to their walls, the Carthaginians fled within their gates.

9. Having refreshed his men with food and sleep, the general ordered them to advance for twenty miles.

10. Antiochus remained at Ephesus, quite heedless of (*securus de*) the war, as if the Romans were not likely to cross to Asia.

11. A certain army went to Spain ; when it got there, without making any attack, it came back again.

12. Having robbed the Temple of all its gold and silver, the barbarians burned it.

13. The Germans, hearing shouts behind them, and seeing that their own men were being massacred, threw down their arms, deserted their military standards, and fled out of their camp.

14. When they reached the Rhine, despairing of further flight, a large number having been cut down, the rest flung themselves into the river.

Exercise 62 (C)

Having defeated the enemy in several engagements, Caesar left his legions in camp, and hastened in person to the shore. For a great storm had arisen on the previous night, and many of the ships had been badly damaged, and cast up on the beach. Some twelve of the ships being ruined, Caesar found the rest, though with much trouble, capable of being repaired. Accordingly, collecting the bronze and the timbers from the ships which had suffered most from the storm, he made use of these for repairing the rest. About forty ships being in this way sufficiently repaired, Caesar had them again drawn down to the water ; and having spent eight days in this work, he hastened to return to his army. On reaching the camp he learned that the enemy had gathered reinforcements and ventured upon an attack, hoping without doubt to achieve some success in the absence of the Roman leader. So well prepared, however, had they found the Romans, that they had soon lost heart and retreated without achieving anything.

XXI. FUTURE INFINITIVES and PARTICIPLES

Future Infinitives and Participles are a frequent source of trouble and require special care.

It is important to remember that the Future Infinitives and Participles of *Deponent* Verbs are *Active in form*, and that in *Active* and *Deponent* Verbs the Participle is declinable and must be made to agree, e. g. :

The girl hoped to remain at home. Puella se domi mansuram esse speravit.

They said they would not use their books. Negaverunt se libris usuros esse.

On the other hand it must be remembered that the Future Infinitive *PASSIVE* never changes its form, e. g. :

He believed that the city would be taken. Credidit urbem captum iri.

The reason of this is that the word 'captum' is not a participle but a supine. (The Future Infinitive Passive is made up of the

Impersonal Present Infinitive Passive of the verb 'eo', to go, and the active supine in *-um*. Hence the sentence above might be said to mean literally, He believed that there was a going or that it was gone, to capture the city.)

N.B. The occasional use of the Future Participle to express intention (rare in Cicero but increasingly common from Livy's time), purpose, likelihood, &c., is also worthy of notice, e.g.:

Facite quod vobis libet; daturus non sum amplius. Do what you will; I have no intention of giving more. (Cicero.)

Misit legatos ad Tiberium oraturos auxilia. He sent envoys to Tiberius to beg for reinforcements. (Tacitus.)

Rem ausus plus famae habituram quam fidei. He dared a deed more likely to be talked about than believed. (Livy, ii. 10. 11.)

A very common and convenient use of the Future Participle is in periphrasis with some part of the verb 'sum' (Periphrastic Conjugation), to act as a Future Subjunctive, e.g.:

Nescio an venturus sit. I do not know whether he will come.

Especially common are the periphrases 'futurum esse (or, *fore*) ut' and 'futurum fuisse ut' with the Subjunctive; and their use becomes essential if the verb has no Future Participle. Even in the Passive they are more common than the Supine with *iri*.

Spero fore ut contingat id nobis. I hope that this will fall to our lot.

Veientes credebant fore ut Roma a Gallis caperetur (more common than Romam a Gallis captum iri). The Veientes believed that Rome would be captured by the Gauls.

Exercise 63 (A)

1. The king's daughters said they would pluck flowers to adorn the banquet.

2. The doctor said that this food would not do me good.

3. Caesar believed that the Britons would be conquered within two years.

4. The boys promised that they would use their books and try to learn.

5. I had never believed that your dog would follow me.

6. The enemy swore that they would no longer use poison.

7. The old man knew that he would shortly die.

8. The brave Balbus slew the monster when-it-was-about-to-enter the water.

9. He returned to Rome, intending-to-look-for his brother.

10. We plant many trees of which we do not believe we shall ever see the fruit.

Exercise 64 (B)

1. Although (*cum*) he had said he would not go, he went.
2. Never will I be persuaded that Britons will be conquered by so barbarous a people.
3. The prisoners could scarcely believe they would be pardoned.
4. What reason have we for believing that the sun will rise to-morrow ?
5. He said he did not believe it, and never would believe it.
6. The general, not thinking that the enemy would dare to leave their camp by night, went out to explore the nature of the place.
7. This He said to prove them ; for He Himself knew what He would do.
8. The room (*conclave*) where the king was intending to remain if he had gone, collapsed on the following night.
9. The faithful Balbus said he would never be persuaded to lie.
10. You must love me myself and not my belongings, if we are to be true friends.

Exercise 65 (C)

Thus encouraged by their general, and hoping soon to gain a rich reward, the soldiers promised to use their best endeavours to overcome the enemy. They adopted a policy of frightfulness calculated to strike terror into all who resisted, and there was no one but believed the city would be captured within ten days. It is said that even women and children accompanied the soldiers to their camp, and expected soon to be sharing in the plunder and enjoying the stored-up riches of this opulent city. But the citizens within the walls had no intention of allowing their wealth to be used to satisfy the greed and ambition of their cruel enemy ; and when once they had realized that it was impossible for them to hold out more than a day or two longer, they deliberately heaped up all their treasures, and all they could collect of corn and wine and oil into their market-place, kindled the whole into a mighty blaze, and, preferring to perish rather than fall into the hands of so cruel a foe, themselves deliberately leaped into the flames.

XXII. *FURTHER USES of the ABLATIVE*MATERIAL: QUALITY: MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE:
WORDS GOVERNING ABLATIVE

MATERIAL—The Ablative of Material is used chiefly with *Constare* (to consist). In the Classical period an *ex* was used; in later Latin it was often omitted.

Ex animo constamus et corpore (Cic.). We are made up of mind and body.

Cibus lacte caseo carne constat (Caes.). Their food consists of milk, cheese, and flesh.

In 'to become one thing *from* another', *fieri* is used with either *ex* or *de*, as

Ex oratore arator factus (Cic.). From orator become ploughman.

De templo carcerem fieri (Cic.). From a temple to become a jail!

QUALITY—or Description. We have seen (p. 13) that in such a sentence as 'He acted with wisdom', the matter-of-fact Latins never used the Ablative alone, feeling that an adjective was necessary to make the meaning clear (i. e. to explain whether much or little wisdom was meant). In the same way to express 'He is a man of wisdom', they could use either an Ablative or a Genitive for the word Wisdom, but it must never be used without a defining adjective.

Vir est summa(e) sapientia(e).

NOTE. This is called in Grammars the Ablative (or Genitive) of Quality *with epithet*.

NOTE. The Ablative rather than the Genitive was used to express physical or outward qualities, as, *Agésilas* was of low stature. *Agésilas statura fuit humili* (Nep.).

MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE (by how much greater or smaller, &c.) is naturally expressed by the Ablative, as:

Sol multis partibus major est quam luna. The sun is many times greater than (as great as) the moon.

Hibernia est dimidio minor quam Britannia. Ireland is less by half than (i. e. half as large as) Britain.

NOTE. For 'much, little, &c.', when with a comparative, be careful to use the Ablative forms *multo*, *paullo*, &c.

WORDS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE. The most important of these are :

- (1) The adjectives *Dignus* (worthy of), *Indignus* (unworthy of), *Contentus* (content with), *Orbus* (bereft of), *Onustus* (laden with), *Praeditus* (endowed with), *Fretus* (relying on).
- (2) Verbs signifying to abound or be lacking in, fill with or deprive of, &c. Also the verbs *Utor*, use, *Vescor*, feed on, *Fungor*, perform, *Fruor*, enjoy, *Potior*, take possession of. (N.B. *Potior* sometimes also takes a genitive.)
- (3) The Nouns *OPUS* and *USUS*. These take the Ablative of the Thing wanted, and the Dative of the Person who wants ; but the thing wanted may be the Subject, and *Opus* (but not *Usus*) may be used as a Predicate, as :

Opus (or *usus*) est mihi equo } I have need of a horse.
or *Opus* est mihi equus }

Quod non opus est, asse carum est. What is not needful is dear at a penny.

Exercise 66 (A)

1. There was in that temple a statue made of gold.
2. The lad was of a ruddy countenance and goodly to look upon.
3. The temple of Aesculapius is five miles distant from the city.
4. The Britons feed on milk and flesh, and are clothed in skins.
5. Cicero boasted that he was on most familiar terms with Pompey.
6. He believes that the war will end sooner than people think ('than opinion').
7. Zeuxis and Polygnotus did not use more than four colours.
8. From captain he soon became general.
9. A lofty (*excelsus*) mind is free from all care.
10. The man was driving before himself a donkey laden with gold.

11. What need have we of other witnesses ?
12. The (*quo*) more we have, the (*eo*) more we desire.
13. Balbus was a man of small body and big feet.
14. We have need of money to build a larger chapel.

Exercise 67 (B)

1. He is very intimate with the few friends he has.
2. To be exempt from human frailties (*immunis vitium*) is to have fortune in one's own power.
3. For already more than two years this war has been carried on by land and sea ; nor do we yet see the end.
4. As many citizens are dying of hunger, as soldiers of their wounds (*Quot . . . tot*).
5. When he performs a judge's duties honestly, then and not till then will he enjoy the good-will of his fellow citizens.
6. Rightly do you divine (*auguror*) concerning me, that nothing is farther from me than cruelty.
7. As long as (*quoad*) I am detained here, I shall never be free from annoyance (*molestia*).
8. We see that the advantages we use, the light we enjoy, and the breath we draw, are given us by Heaven.
9. He is too well off to be in need of money.
10. Are not many of the citizens, relying on the strength and valour of our soldiers, enjoying ease and luxury at home ?

Exercise 68 (C)

Epaminondas had an unfavourable critic (*obtrektor*) in one Meneclides, likewise from Thebes (use *indidem*, and look it out), and an opponent in the management of the affairs of the state. This man, seeing that Epaminondas was pre-eminent (*florere*) in military matters, used to urge the Thebans to prefer peace to war, in order that the general's services might be no longer needed. To him Epaminondas said, ' You are deceiving your fellow citizens by that catchword (*verbum*) of yours ; for in the name of Peace you are inviting Slavery. Peace is won (use *pario*) by war, and those who wish to enjoy it for any length of time (*diutinus*) must be well trained (*exercitati*) in fighting. Wherefore

if you wish to be the leading state in Greece, you must make use of the camp, and not the training-school (*palaestra*)'.

When this same Meneclides cast it in his teeth (*obicio*) that he fancied he had attained the warlike fame of Agamemnon, Epaminondas replied, 'In that (*quod*) you think I emulate Agamemnon, you are mistaken. For he with the assistance of the whole of Greece captured with difficulty one city in ten years; I on the contrary, with our city alone, and in the space of one day, have freed the whole of Greece by routing the Lacedaemonians.'

XXIII. *The PREDICATIVE DATIVE*

(a) My stick is hard wood.

(b) My stick is a great help to me.

If we think for a moment over these two sentences, we notice that the word 'is' in the first means 'is literally', whereas the 'is' in the second means 'serves as' or 'stands for', or 'is' in a metaphorical or less literal sense.

The Latins marked this difference by putting the complement in sentence (a) into the Nominative, and in (b) into the Dative; as

(a) *Baculum meum est robur durum.*

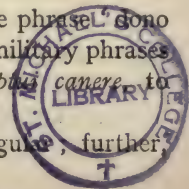
(b) *Baculum mihi est magno auxilio.*

This Complementary or Predicative Dative is quite frequent in Latin. A much quoted instance is Horace's '*Avidum mare exitio est nautis*', the greedy sea is (for) a destruction to sailors. It is most frequently found with the verb *esse*, but is also found with *dare*, *ducere*, *vertere*, and other verbs. A Dative of the Person (as *mihi*, *nautis*, in the instances given above) is often coupled with it.

Specially noteworthy is the legal phrase '*cui bono*', lit. 'to whom is it for a good?' i.e. (in searching for the author of a crime) 'who is the gainer thereby?'

This Dative with DARE is chiefly found in the phrase '*dono dare*', to give as a present. Closely akin are the military phrases *auxilio*, *praesidio*, *esse* or *mittere*, &c., and *receptum canere*, to sound (the bugle for) a retreat.

The Predicative Dative is only found in the Singular, further,



it seems always to have had the force of an Adjective, and therefore must not have coupled with it any adjective except one of quantity ; e.g. :

This is a burden to me (=burdensome). Hoc est mihi oneri.

This is a *heavy* burden to me (=very burdensome). Hoc est mihi *magno* oneri (not *gravi*).

Practically the only adjectives used in the construction are Magnus, Maior, Maximus, and Tantus and Quantus. Moreover, it is only when used with *esse* that an adjective is found at all.

Exercise 69 (A)

1. This thing was a great help to the Romans.
2. As night was already approaching, the general sounded a retreat.
3. Beware lest you become a laughing-stock to all.
4. To whose advantage will it be ?
5. Attalus gave his kingdom as a gift to the Romans.
6. Caesar sent five hundred horse to the help of the tenth legion.
7. Why have you imputed this to me as a fault ?
8. The deep snow was a great hindrance to our men.
9. This shall be a sign unto you.
10. There was a lack of everything which was of use for repairing ships.

Exercise 70 (B)

1. Cicero boasts that to no one was his arrival a burden or an expense.
2. What you put down to my credit, he has made a ground of accusation against me.
3. Sallust declares that virtue alone can neither be given nor received as a gift.
4. I know that you have this matter very much at heart.
5. The merciless general ordered his soldiers to burn houses and kill both women and children, a policy of frightfulness (say, a very cruel thing) but likely to prove a source of terror to the enemy.
6. When they had caught the spies, they put out an eye of each, and sent them home to be a warning to their fellow citizens.

7. (Inscription at the foot of a clock-tower.) The clock (*horologium*) which is from here seen above (use *suspicio*, lit. see from below), grateful citizens gave as a gift.

8. That you are in adversity has long been a great grief to me.

9. Let it not be a reproach to us that we have been wanting to our country in her hour of need (use *laboro*).

10. The talents and even the virtues of her first six French kings were a curse to England. The follies and vices of her seventh were her salvation. (Macaulay).

11. He said that if ever he grew weary of life he used to work hard, and toil proved a remedy.

Exercise 71 (C)

On the approach of the enemy there were some of the citizens who thought it would be best to burn the city and retreat into the woods and mountain fastnesses. But the more part of the people held other views. Their city was, they said, both the pride and the bulwark of the whole province, and was so strongly defended both by nature and by art that not even the strongest enemy could ever take it by storm. For it was protected on almost every side by river or by marsh, nor did it afford to an enemy more than one approach, and that a very narrow one. It would be a great disgrace, they said, to burn and abandon such a city, and offer no resistance to the invader. A council having been called, and the matter deliberated for a long space, it was at length resolved with all speed to bring into the town an abundance of supplies, and whatsoever things were of use for resisting a siege, and to meet the enemy with a good courage.

XXIV. COMPARATIVE SENTENCES

The Comparative Sentence (a peculiar type of the Relative) is introduced in English by AS or THAN, in Latin by a great variety of relative forms, e.g. :

(a) by the correlatives *is . . . qui, tantus . . . quantus, tot . . . quot, &c.* ;

(b) by *atque* or *ac* ;

(c) by *quam*.

Examples.

(a) Qui minimum cupit, is minimo eget. He lacks least who desires least.

Quot homines, tot sententiae. Many men, many minds (lit. How many men, so many opinions).

Quo citius, eo melius. The sooner, the better (lit. By how much sooner, by that much better).

NOTE 1. Observe that the clause containing the Relative (qui, quot, quantus, qualis, &c.) often precedes the other in Latin.

NOTE 2. We use the word 'such' in English to mean either 'of such a kind' or 'so great'; whenever the word has the latter meaning, we must be careful to translate in Latin by tantus . . . quantus, not by talis . . . qualis.

(b) Hoc est idem $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{atque} \\ \text{quod} \end{array} \right\}$ illud. This is the same as that.

De hac re tu aliter sentis atque ego. On this point your view is different from mine.

(c) Esse quam videri bonus malebat. He preferred to be than to appear good.

NOTE. The rule is that *quam* takes the same case after it as before it. This is so even when the word before it is an object and the word after it a subject, unless the verb is expressed with the subject. Hence the sentence 'I have never seen a house more beautiful than yours' may become in Latin :

Domum nunquam vidi pulchriorem quam *est tua*, or Domum nunquam vidi pulchriorem quam *tuam*. (Or we could in this instance use the ablative of Comparison, and write simply *tuā pulchriorem*.)

Exercise 72 (A)

1. He who errs least lives most happily.
2. My house is not so large as you suppose.
3. I have not so many oxen as my brother.
4. Is not this the same as that ?
5. The queen is as good as she is beautiful.
6. The book is not such as I had imagined.
7. Pythius sold the estate for as large a sum as he wished.
8. I am resting so long as I am writing to you.
9. He is richer than his brother, but not so rich as you.
10. The less you indulge yourself, the happier you will be.

Exercise 73 (B)

1. The tyrant's wealth was great, but not so great as his greed.
2. When asked how many friends he had, he replied that he had as many friends as there were citizens.
3. I am told that he asked you to dinner just as often as he met you.
4. He said that he had seen no shrewder man than Phormio.
5. Cicero says that most people wish to have a friend who is of such a character as they themselves cannot be.
6. I know that Caesar does not hold the same political views as I do.
7. The more illustrious a man's life, the greater the regret at his death.
8. I have not found the man such as you described him in your letter.
9. His boldness is in inverse proportion to his wickedness. (Say, By how much the more wicked, by that much the less bold is he.)
10. I wonder that I do not get letters from you as often as they are brought to me from my brother Quintus.
11. Nepos wrote that Hannibal so far surpassed all other generals, as the Roman people excelled all nations in bravery.
12. All the world knows that Corinth is not so large a city as once it was.
13. The Romans' credit (*gratia*) for this was greater than the Carthaginians' would have been.

Exercise 74 (C)

Fellow citizens, it is matter for deep regret that there should be found in our midst at a time like the present, when our country is threatened by a most cruel and unscrupulous foe, a number of men who so far play into the hands of our enemies as to advocate the making of peace on any terms whatever. Men of this kind have long since been a danger to the state. Did not their fathers, in the war which twenty years ago we waged in Africa, increase the difficulties and the dangers under which our country laboured, by arguing that we had no just cause for waging war? And

such as the fathers were, such are the sons. Can any one doubt that there ought to be as many enemies of Germany as there are Britons? and that to side with the enemy is the same thing as to betray one's fatherland? Fellow citizens, it is the part of every true patriot to turn a deaf ear to these enemies of their country, who, while they profess to desire peace, are in reality doing their utmost to prolong the war.

Exercise 75 (C)

I can see more good and more evil in all men than heretofore I did. I see that good men are not as good as I once thought they were, but have more imperfections; and that nearer approach and fuller trial doth make the best appear more weak and faulty than their admirers at a distance think. And I find that few are as bad as either malicious enemies or censorious separating professors imagine. I less admire gifts of utterance, and bare profession of religion than once I did; and have much more charity for many, who, by the want of gifts, do make an obscurer profession than they. I once thought that almost all who could pray movingly and fluently, and talk well of religion, had been saints. But experience hath opened to me what odious crimes may consist with high profession; and I have met with divers obscure persons, not noted for any extraordinary profession or forwardness in religion, but only to live a quiet blameless life, whom I have often found to have long lived, as far as I could discern, a truly godly and sanctified life; only, their prayers and duties were by accident kept secret from other men's observation. Yet, he that upon this pretence would confound the godly and the ungodly, may as well go about to lay heaven and hell together.

(RICHARD BAXTER.)

XXV. SUPINES

Supines are verbal substantives, which are used only in the Accusative and Ablative cases.

The Supine in *-um* is used chiefly after verbs of motion, to express Purpose, e.g.:

Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae. The ladies come to see the show; they come to be themselves a show.

It occasionally governs an object, but not often, e.g.:

Patriam defensum revocatus est Hannibal. Hannibal was recalled to defend his country.

(*'Ad patriam defendendam'* would be the more usual construction.)

When combined with *iri* (the impersonal Passive Infinitive of the verb *eo*) the Supine in *-um* forms the Future Infinitive Passive:

Multos et bonos interfectum iri constat. It is admitted that many good men will be slain.

The Supine in *-u* is used chiefly with adjectives: also with a few indeclinable substantives (esp. *fas*, right, *nefas*, wrong). It never governs an object, e.g.:

Mirabile dictu. Wondrous to tell.

Exercise 76 (A)

1. I was going to call on Caius to-day.
2. This is sooner said than done (easier in the saying than in the doing).
3. The townsfolk came to Caesar to ask for pardon.
4. Those women are horrible to behold.
5. His father hoped that the boy would not be slain in the fight.
6. The story is neither easy to tell nor pleasant to hear.
7. With the break of day messengers came to sue for peace.
8. It was a sin to do this; may it be right for me to tell of it.
9. On the announcement of this victory the citizens came in crowds to salute the Queen.
10. Let the slave be the last to go to bed.

Exercise 77 (B)

1. When Nasica went to call on the poet Ennius in the morning, the maidservant said he was not at home.
2. What is more pleasant to hear and to know than that one's friends are prospering?
3. When an Athenian citizen, well advanced in years, entered the theatre, it is said that the Lacedaemonians all rose and invited the old man to sit down.
4. Now slow across the meadows come the kine to drink.
5. It was clear that the Germans had hoped that this city would be captured within twenty-eight days.

6. I am aware that much of what I have related and shall have to relate may perhaps seem petty trifles to record.

7. The prisoners knew well enough that if they did not obey they would at once be put to death.

8. A messenger announced that certain of the soldiers had gone out into the fields to forage and to plunder.

9. Then the slave said ' I was hired (*conductus*) to cook, not to be beaten (*vapulo*).'

10. Envoys came to the camp of the Aequi to complain of wrongs, and to claim compensation (*res repetere*) in accordance with the treaty.

11. What is so pleasant to hear as a speech adorned with wise reflections and with weighty words ?

12. There was no district from which they did not come to congratulate me publicly.

13. On Caesar's arrival the Bituriges sent ambassadors to the Aedui, to ask for help, in order the more easily to resist the enemy's forces.

Exercise 78 (C)

The war between the Romans and Veientes lasted nine years. It is difficult to say what portion of the events recorded of it is worthy of credit ; nor would the details at any rate be worth repeating now. But it seems to have been carried on with equal fortune on both sides, and to have been ended by a perfectly equal treaty. The Romans established themselves on the Cremera, a fast-flowing river difficult to cross, within the Veientine territory, built a sort of town there, and, after maintaining their post for some time to the great annoyance of the enemy, they were at last surprised and their whole force slaughtered, and the post abandoned. Then the Veientes in their turn established themselves on the hill Janiculum within the Roman territory ; sent frequent excursions across the Tiber to lay waste the Roman fields and avenge the damage which their own lands had sustained from the post on the Cremera ; and after holding their ground for more than a year, and hoping that the city itself would be taken, were eventually in their turn defeated, and obliged to evacuate their conquest.

(ARNOLD, *History of Rome* : adapted.)

Exercise 79 (C)

When Eleazar received the king's letter and presents, he assembled the people together, and offered sacrifices for the welfare of King Ptolemy and his kingdom; and he sent back six elders, learned in the law, chosen out of each of the twelve tribes, in all seventy-two men, and with them a very precious copy of the law, written in golden letters on the finest parchment, joined together with such art that no one could see where the skins joined. And when the seventy-two elders reached Alexandria, Ptolemy himself received them, and examined the copy of the law which they had brought with them. It chanced that on the same day he had heard of a great victory which his ships had gained at sea over Antigonus, and he commanded them to sup with him that very evening. So he made a great feast for them, arranging matters so that the food set before them should be such as was lawful for Jews to eat.

(MISS BRAMSTON, *Judaea and her Rulers.*)

XXVI. PRICE and VALUE

The VALUE AT which a thing is held is naturally expressed by the Locative Case; but the actual PRICE for which a thing is bought or sold is more naturally expressed by the Ablative (which is really an instrumental ablative; as in 'I bought it *with my last shilling*').

As the functions of the old Locative Case were absorbed partly by the Genitive and partly by the Ablative, and the original local meaning was lost sight of, it is not unnatural that the distinction between the use of the Genitive to express the estimated *value* and the Ablative to express the actual *price* was not always strictly observed.

A rule may be stated as follows:

VALUE is regularly expressed by the *Genitive* (as *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris, minoris, plurimi, maximi, minimi, assis, huius, nihili, flocci, &c.*), but with the verb 'aestimo' the Ablative may also be used.

PRICE is regularly expressed by the *Ablative*; but the Genitive is used with the four words *tanti, quanti, pluris, and minoris*.

Examples :

Value. Patriam suam non flocci facit. He does not value his country at a straw.

Pluris habetur quam Cicero. He is esteemed more highly than Cicero.

Price. Quanti emptum? Parvo. Quanti ergo? Octussibus. What did you give for it? Not much. Well, how much? Eight asses. (Lit. 'At what price was it bought? With a small sum', &c.)

NOTE. Bene emere, is to buy *cheap*; bene vendere, to sell *dear*.

Exercise 80 (A)

1. Virtue should be valued more highly than wealth.
2. How much do you think my house is worth?
3. I bought that slave for forty minae.
4. Do you not value freedom more than luxury?
5. He sold his horse for 1,200 sesterces.
6. I was unwilling to buy the house for 10,000 sesterces.
7. The estate delights me greatly, nor did it cost me a large sum.
8. Diogenes did not care a straw for pleasure.
9. He values the farm so highly that not even for a large sum is he willing to sell it.
10. What is not needful is dear at a penny.

Exercise 81 (B)

1. Ought we to value any man more highly than one who has proved himself a faithful friend for many years?
2. The philosopher said that silence should sometimes be valued more highly than gold.
3. Your friendship is of more value to me than the praise of all the world besides.
4. It is to the interest of Claudius that the house should be sold for as high a price as possible.
5. Caesar explains how great a loss, and the deaths of how many brave men, a victory must of necessity cost (use *constare*).
6. What is of more value to each man than his own life?

7. The abandoned Catiline set no value on his country's safety, the highest on his own advantage.

8. Was it not possible that this ointment should be sold for a large sum, and given to the poor ?

9. To buy cheap and sell dear is the very essence of commerce ; no merchant will make a fortune in any other way.

10. Arms are of small value abroad, unless there is wisdom (good counsel) at home.

11. I am not one to wish for peace at any price.

12. People never will recollect that mere learning and mere cleverness are of next to no value in life, while energy and intellectual grip, the things that are inborn and cannot be taught, are everything. (T. H. Huxley.)

Exercise 82 (C)

Born in a humble position, this man had by his unscrupulous methods and ambitious schemes acquired great possessions and established himself as a veritable tyrant in the land. Enjoying great influence with the populace on account of his liberality, he had ever used this influence to increase his own power. For many years past he had farmed the customs and most of the other public revenues, bought up at a low rate ; and he had acquired for three talents a house which had been valued at more than thirty, for the simple reason that, when he bid, no one dared to bid against him. With the monopolies thus gained he had largely increased his private fortune, besides providing himself with ample means of corruption ; and a powerful cavalry force maintained at his own charges was always about his person. And now, relying on his power and his wealth, he endeavoured both by bribes and by threats, to bend to his will the envoys of this island state. But he had mistaken the temper of the men with whom he had to deal. The envoys replied boldly that their fellow citizens set less store by their own welfare than by that of their country ; that they valued freedom more than wealth, and honour most of all. Wherefore they cared nothing for the tyrant's threats, and together with all their fellow citizens would oppose him with all their strength ; and even if their victory should cost much blood, they were confident that they would win.

(Cf. CAESAR, *B. G.* I, ch. 18.)

XXVII. GERUNDS and GERUNDIVES

One use of the Infinitive is as a verbal substantive, e.g. *Humanum est errare*, To err (or Error) is human. The Gerund (and in part the Supines also) supplies the oblique cases of this verbal substantive, as :

Acc. *Ad proficiscendum paratus.* Ready for starting.

Gen. *Discendi cupidus.* Desirous of learning.

Ars scribendi. The art of writing.

Dat. *Venando studet.* He is devoted to hunting.

Abl. *Parcendo vincimus.* By sparing we conquer.

The Accusative is only used when governed by a preposition. When the Gerund is in the Genitive, or the Ablative without a preposition, it may govern an object.

While the GERUND is thus an *active verbal substantive*, the GERUNDIVE on the other hand is a *passive verbal adjective*, with a notion of 'must' or 'ought' or 'meet to be', as :

Amandus est pater. The father ought to be loved.

Delenda est Carthago. Carthage must be destroyed.

Deponent verbs also have a Gerundive ; it is the only part of a Deponent verb which has a passive meaning ; as

Cohortandi sunt milites (Caes.). The soldiers have to be exhorted.

Pravitas eorum admiranda est (Sall.). Their wickedness is to be marvelled at.

Quae utenda¹ accepi, reddidi. What I borrowed, I returned.

Aedem Castoris habuit tuendam (Cic.). He had the temple of Castor to keep (lit. to be kept) in good order.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

In translating such phrases as 'by *writing a book*', 'for the sake of *saving his father*', we may use :

(1) The GERUND construction, which is *exactly like the English*, as *Scribendo librum* ; *Patrem servandi causa*.

¹ *Utor* is occasionally found as an Accusative verb, but in the classical period only in the Gerundive construction. *Utendum dare* is to lend, *utendum petere, rogare, or accipere*, to borrow.

But the more common and more idiomatic construction is :

- (2) The GERUNDIVE ATTRACTION, in which the substantive is governed by a preposition, or made to depend on another noun (such as *Causa* above), and the Gerundive is made to agree with it, as :

Libro scribendo. Patris servandi causa.

NOTE. Observe that *causa* must stand *after* the Gerund or Gerundive.

Exercise 83 (A)

Translate the following phrases in *both* ways, i.e. using first the GERUND and secondly the GERUNDIVE ATTRACTION construction :

1. The art of writing a letter.
2. For the sake of saving a friend.
3. An opportunity of crushing the enemy.
4. By fortifying the citadel.
5. The plan of renewing the war.
6. The toil of finishing the work.
7. For the sake of seeing the temple.
8. Desirous of frightening the enemy.
9. The work of breaking down the bridge.
10. Fond of winning glory.

When both constructions are thus available it is better as a rule to use the Gerundive Attraction, as being more idiomatic and more commonly found. But if its use would involve the jingling recurrence of genitives in *-orum* or *-arum* (as, *amicorum servandorum gratia*), it is better to use the Gerund ; and with Intransitive and Dative verbs the Gerund construction is the only one possible, as the Gerundive is passive, and Intransitive and Dative verbs cannot be used in the passive, except impersonally. Thus we must write :

Civibus persuadendi causa (not *Civium persuadendorum*).

THE AGENT WITH THE GERUNDIVE

It is to be noted that with the Gerundive the AGENT is regularly expressed by the DATIVE (instead of the Ablative with *ab*), as :

Amandi nobis sunt parentes. We ought to love our parents.

Vita nobis tuenda est. 'Life let us cherish.'

Proelia coniugibus loquenda (Hor.). Battles for wives to talk of.

But if such a use of the Dative would involve ambiguity, then it is better to use the Ablative with *ab* ; thus ' *Pecunia ei solvenda* ' means (should be taken to mean): The money must be paid *to* him ; and if we want to translate: The money must be paid *by* him, we had better write ' *Pecunia ab eo solvenda* '.

THE GERUNDIVE USED IMPERSONALLY

Very important is the construction in which the Neuter of the Gerundive is used *Impersonally* with *est* (*erit*, *erat*, &c.) in such phrases as :

Eundum est mihi. I must go.

Moriendum est omnibus. All must die.

This Impersonal construction is used with verbs which are *Intransitive* (or used Intransitively), or which govern the *Dative* (or any other case than the Accusative¹). Common sense, or the context, will make it clear whether the Dative denotes the *Agent* or the *Object*. Other examples are :

Obtemperandum tibi legibus. You must obey the laws.

Resistendum erat hostibus. The enemy had to be resisted.

Nunc est bibendum (Hor.). Now is the time for revelry.

Hic vobis vincendum aut moriendum (Liv.). Here you must conquer or die.

Suo cuique iudicio est utendum (Cic.). Each must use his own judgement.

NOTE. When we have the choice between Dative and Accusative verbs with the same meaning, we must use the *Impersonal* construction with the Dative verb, but the *Personal* construction with the Accusative verb ; e.g. for ' We must assist our allies ' we may write either *Succurrendum est sociis*, or *Socii (nobis) adiuvandi sunt*.

Exercise 84 (A)

1. Hannibal thought a battle ought to be fought at once.
2. We must start immediately and hasten to Rome.
3. You should not have done this.
4. We must assist our allies with all our might.
5. The general said that they must no longer delay.
6. The fourth legion undertook to build a bridge over the river.
7. We knew that we should have to march till evening.

¹ With Accusative verbs the construction is archaic and rare: e.g. *Aeternas quoniam poenas in morte timendumst* (Lucr. I. III).

8. We shall have to build a wall and dig a ditch.
9. Did I not entrust the education of my sons to you?
10. The boys should not have used their books.

Exercise 85 (B)

1. You will have to use all your diligence in carrying through a work so needful and so arduous.
2. Unless we gain a great victory within forty days, we shall have to depart altogether from that district.
3. The laws must be obeyed ; let the traitor die unavenged.
4. The boy will have to be persuaded never again to abandon his work and run home.
5. You ought to have started earlier ; to reach home before midnight you will have to run all the way.
6. If they fight bravely to-morrow, the soldiers must be spared.
7. In saving their country must not many hardships be endured by all good citizens ?
8. The poet has taught us that the proud should be warred down but the vanquished spared. [his own son ?
9. Should a man who has lied so often be believed even by
10. The aged king replied that if there must be fighting, he preferred to fight against enemies rather than against friends.

Exercise 86 (C)

In their landing on this coast our men had to face much the same dangers as Caesar tells us confronted the Romans on their first landing in Britain. Owing to their size, the ships could not be moored except in deep water, and our soldiers, in unfamiliar places, with hands hampered, and weighed down with a load of kit, had to jump from their boats and at the same time make a stand in the waves, and do battle with the enemy ; whereas the Turks, either from dry ground or having advanced but a little way into the water, with limbs unhampered and in places well known to them, took aim with confidence, and spurred on horses well used to such work. Although utterly unused to warfare of this kind, our men, fighting with great heroism under these desperate odds, and at a heavy cost of killed and wounded, none the less at length succeeded in effecting a landing, and compelled the enemy to retire.

XXVIII. VERBS of FEARING

Verbs of Fearing are followed

- (1) by the Simple Infinitive, to express the fear to do anything ;
- (2) by NE, or NE NON with the Subjunctive, to express the fear lest anything may or may not happen.

Examples :

- (1) Non timet mori. He is not afraid to die.
- (2) Vereor ne veniat. I am afraid lest (or, that) he will come.
Vereor *ne non* veniat. I am afraid lest (or, that) he will *not* come.

In this last sentence the two negatives may be allowed to cancel one another, and we may write : Vereor *ut* veniat, with the same meaning (I am anxious that he may come).

But if the Principal verb is negated, *ne non* (not *ut*) must be used :

Non vereor *ne non* veniat. I am not afraid that he will not come.

Note that although the coming refers to the future, and the English verb is ' will come ', it is adequately translated by the Latin *Present* Subjunctive ; and the *Imperfect* Subjunctive translates ' would come ' in the same way :

Metuebam ne non rediret. I was afraid he would not return.

But if emphasis is laid on the idea of futurity or likelihood, it is better to use the Subjunctive Future (periphrastic) :

Vereor ut hoc tibi profuturum sit. I am afraid this is not likely to do you good.

Exercise 87 (A)

1. He was afraid to jump into the lake.
2. He was afraid he would be drowned.
3. I am afraid he will not come back.
4. Are you afraid to tell the truth ?
5. I am not afraid to tell the truth ; nay rather, I am afraid not to tell the truth.
6. I am afraid he is not well.
7. We were afraid that all to a man had perished.
8. I am afraid that Cato, already advanced in years, is not likely to live through another winter.

9. He was afraid that the enemy would be informed of his plans.
10. I am afraid the venture (*res*) is not likely to turn out well.

Exercise 88 (B)

1. Seeing that we have allies so many and so brave, can any one fear that we shall not win? [windows.]
2. I was afraid to throw a stone, for fear of breaking the
3. This then is what you are afraid of—you, Balbus, lest you marry her; you, Claudius, lest you don't.
4. The only thing I was afraid of was lest I should act disgracefully, or rather had already acted disgracefully.
5. I am afraid this book will seem to have too little honey and too much wormwood (*absinthium*).
6. We were afraid we had formed a plan which we could not easily carry out.
7. I have no fear of your courage not coming up to public expectation (*hominum opinioni respondere*).
8. Were you then afraid, my brother, that I did not wish to see you?
9. He who has lived well and honourably fears not to die.
10. Dumnorix declared that Caesar's design was to murder, when he had taken them across to Britain, those whom he feared to put to death in Gaul.
11. I have an aged mother and two sisters, whom I maintain by my daily labour; under the circumstances I am not afraid of being asked why I prefer to remain at home rather than to be fighting at the front.

Exercise 89 (C)

CICERO WRITES FROM HIS PROVINCE TO A FRIEND

A very serious war is impending; and no one doubts that the Parthian king Orodes will himself, when summer comes, at once cross the Euphrates with all his forces. All this makes me fear lest, Pompeius not being allowed to leave Rome at all from the dread of an outbreak, and the Senate refusing to grant any special privileges to Caesar, members should think that till this knot can be untied I ought not to return home before a successor has been appointed; or that while things are in such a disturbed state, it is not right to leave such important provinces each to

the charge of a mere deputy. Thus I dread lest there should be some extension of my time, which nobody could even stop with his veto, and all the more because you, who could meet many of my difficulties with your good advice and influence and sympathy, are now away. You will say that I am simply creating anxieties for myself. I cannot help it, and hope it may turn out so ; but I am nervous about everything. I am a little less eager for your letters, than if you were at Rome, but still I do look for them. Farewell.

XXIX. RELATIVE with SUBJUNCTIVE

The Relative Pronoun is often used with the Subjunctive to express Purpose, Consequence, Cause, or some other Adverbial notion.

Misi tibi qui diceret omnia. I sent a man to tell you all.

Peccasse mihi videor qui a te discesserim. I think I did wrong in leaving you.

When the subordinate clause contains a Comparative, *quo* is regularly used for 'in order that', instead of *ut*.

Quo celerius domum perveniret, prima luce profectus est. He started at dawn, in order to reach home the sooner.

The phrases *Sunt qui*, *Is est qui*, *Dignus est qui*, &c., are frequently used with the subjunctive, and are virtually Consecutive.

Sunt qui non habeant. There are some who have not.

Non is sum qui hoc faciam. I am not the man to do this.

Dignus est qui consul fiat. He is worthy of being made consul.

NOTE. Such a sentence as 'He is too wise to do that', is in Latin 'Prudentior est quam qui hoc faciat.'

Exercise 90 (A)

1. The Nervii have sent ambassadors to ask for peace.
2. He chose a place where the army might halt.
3. Was he not worthy to be loved ? [craftsmen.]
4. In order to finish the work more easily, he summoned two
5. Believe me, Claudius, I am not the man to hurt you.
6. Towards evening messengers came to announce that the city had been captured.

7. In order to become more learned, he rose at daybreak every day, and diligently studied his books.
8. There are some who say that these things are not true.
9. The old man plants trees to benefit another generation.
10. In death there is no evil for us to fear.
11. The wretched man had nothing to eat.
12. You who have received many kindnesses from him, ought not to abuse him.

Exercise 91 (B)

1. To the Sigambri Caesar sent messengers to demand that they would give up to him those who had made war upon himself and Gaul.
2. Can you find fault with him, seeing that you yourself have done the same ?
3. Was she not worthy to be queen of the greatest of empires ?
4. That he might recover his health the sooner, I urged him to go to Baiae ; but he is not a man to be easily persuaded.
5. Spies, sent by Caesar to find out what the enemy were doing, brought back word that they had nothing to eat, and were on the point of surrendering (use, *in eo esse ut*).
6. Of these wild beasts there are some so savage that nobody can tame them.
7. It was agreed among all that the traitor was not a man who should be pardoned.
8. If at any time there was danger of our being surrounded, the general sent cavalry to hinder the enemy.
9. Who is so brave as not to fear death ? who so cowardly as not to face it in his country's hour of need ?
10. He is not a fit person for you to converse with.
11. Balbus, when a certain friend complained to him that his wife had hanged herself from a fig-tree, remarked, Pray give me a few shoots (*surculus*) to plant from that tree.

Exercise 92 (C)

Perseus had a beautiful ship built, in which to sail with Andromeda to the island where his mother was. On arriving there he found her in sore distress, for the king of the island had tried to compel her to marry him, and she had fled for refuge to

the altar. Those who took refuge at an altar were under the protection of the gods as long as they remained there, and no one dared to touch them ; but the king commanded that no one should bring Danaë anything to eat, and he placed watchmen all round to see that his orders were obeyed, for he thought that when she was absolutely starving she would be compelled to leave the altar, and then he would be able to seize her and make her his wife. But at this moment Perseus arrived at the island in his ship, and when he heard where his mother was, he went to her, and she told him everything, which made him very angry. The treacherous king heard that Perseus had come back, and he was afraid, and sent three trusted servants to the altar to kill Perseus. But Perseus drew forth the head of Medusa and turned them all to stone ; and having driven out the king, he gave the kingdom to the king's brother, who had always been kind to Danaë.

(Adapted from WITT's *Myths of Hellas*.)

XXX. *The use of NE and QUOMINUS with Verbs of PREVENTING, FORBIDDING, REFUSING, &c.*

Verbs of Preventing, Refusing, &c., may be followed by :

1. NE with the Subjunctive, if they are not negated.
2. QUOMINUS with the Subjunctive, whether they are Positive or Negative.

The most common of these words are :

Prevent : Deterre, intercludere, obstare, obsistere, impedire, impedimento esse, retinere, interponere, deprecari, intercedere ; (with *prohibere* the regular construction is the Infinitive).

Refuse : Recusare, resistere, repugnare, sibi temperare.

Forbid : Interdicere. (*Veto* prefers the Infinitive.)

Examples :

Histiaeus ne res conficeretur obstitit. Histiaeus prevented the thing from being done.

Impedior ne plura dicam. I am prevented from saying more.

Aetas non impedit quominus agri colendi studia teneamus. Age does not prevent our keeping up our interest in agriculture.

Non recusabo quominus omnes mea scripta legant. I shall not object to all the world reading what I have written.

Per Trebonium stetit quominus oppido potirentur. It was due to Trebonius that they did not get possession of the town.

Exercise 93 (A)

1. I will not prevent your going home.
2. What prevents you from being happy ?
3. Was it not your fault that the house was not saved ?
4. He refused to say what he had in mind.
5. Not even the fear of death will prevent the wise man from consulting the interest of his country.
6. Caesar prevented his soldiers from laying waste the fields.
7. The soldiers must be prevented from massacring women and children.
8. Did not Socrates refuse to escape from his prison ?
9. The Consul forbade any one to leave the city after nightfall.
10. With difficulty did I refrain from shedding tears.

Exercise 94 (B)

1. What will there be to prevent your coming back within a fortnight ?
2. Socrates said that nothing should hinder him from consulting the interests of the state.
3. Regulus begged the citizens not to prevent his keeping his word.
4. What did hinder you that ye should not obey the truth ?
5. The Emperor of the Germans declared that it was the fault of the Britons that the war was not speedily finished.
6. Was it not through the Belgians that the city of Paris was not taken within a month of the beginning of the war ?
7. Nothing shall prevent my joining you in Scotland before the 12th of August.
8. We read in the pages of (*apud*) our poet, that it was owing to the mother of Coriolanus that Rome was not captured by the Volsci.
9. In a treaty the business is carried through by means of a prayer that, through whichever people it comes to pass that the conditions named are not abided by, Jupiter may so smite that people, as the pig is smitten by the priests.

10. Let us be given up to our enemies naked and bound ; let us set our people free from religious obligation, if we have bound them by any, lest anything divine or human should prevent a righteous war from being begun afresh.

Exercise 95 (C)

A LETTER FROM A SCHOOLBOY TO HIS BROTHER

DEAR TERTIUS,

I am greatly vexed that I am not yet allowed to come home. I was hoping to be with you on Dec. 18, but this master of ours refuses to allow me to return so long as the cold weather continues, and I remain unwell. For I have been ailing for now ten days, and it is chiefly through the doctor that I am not allowed to leave ; for he declares that I am sick with a fever dangerous both to myself and to others, and forbids me to rise from my bed. Nevertheless I for my part am already beginning to feel better both in body and mind ; and though lying in bed prevents me from beguiling the time by playing games, or drawing and painting, as I am wont when I am well, yet I am able both to write and to read a great deal. I hope therefore to be entirely free from the disease within a short time, and nothing shall prevent me from returning home before the 1st of January. Then we will have some good fun together. Farewell.

Your affectionate brother,

Dec. 13.

HENRY.

XXXI. *The Use of QUIN with Verbs of
PREVENTING, DENYING, &c.*

Verbs of Preventing, Hindering, Doubting, Denying, Refraining, and the like, may also be followed by QUIN with the Subjunctive, *but only when they are negatived* (actually or virtually).

NOTE. Quin is formed from Qui, an old Ablative of the Relative Pronoun, and the negative, so that its literal meaning is 'by which not', just as Quominus means 'by which the less'.

Examples :

Nil me retinebit quin ad te veniam. Nothing shall prevent my coming to you.

Dubitari non potest quin in virtute sint divitiae. It cannot be doubted that there are riches in virtue.

The following phrases are important :

Facere non possum quin . . . I cannot help . . .

Fieri non potest quin . . . It cannot be but that (or, It is impossible that . . . not).

Haud multum (minimum, paullum, &c.) abfuit quin . . . It came near to this that . . .

Examples :

Facere non possum quin ad te scribam. I cannot help writing to you.

Fieri non potest quin urbs capiatur. It is impossible that the city should not fall.

Haud multum abfuit quin Varum interficeret. He came near to killing Varus (lit. It was not far distant but that he should kill Varus. The *abfuit* is Impersonal).

Nihil abest quin sim miserrimus. There is nothing wanting to make me absolutely miserable.

A second use of *quin* makes it equivalent to *qui non* or *ut non* (as if formed from the *Nominative* of the Relative and the negative).

NOTE. Compare the French Qui . . . ne (e.g. Il n'y a personne qui n'ait ses défauts).

Examples :

Nemo est quin audiverit. There is no one but has heard.

Nullus est ager quin vastatus sit. There is not a field but has been laid waste.

NOTE. Occasionally *Quin* stands for *Quae non*, *Quam non*, or *Quod non* ; but instances are rare. Sometimes also it is found as an *Interrogative* particle (Why not ?), but only in exhortation or remonstrance, e.g. :

Quin conscendimus equos ? (Livy). Why not mount our horses ?

Exercise 96 (A)

1. There is no one who does not love riches.
2. I was prevented by the war from coming to you in Florence.
3. Antiochus did not restrain himself from publishing (*edo*) a book against his teacher.
4. Let no one deter you from acting honourably.
5. It cannot be doubted that the sun is larger than the moon.
6. When I heard these things, I could not help shedding tears.

7. The camp was within an ace of being taken by the enemy.
8. It cannot be denied that he has injured his friend.
9. It is impossible that the barbarians should not be informed of Caesar's arrival.
10. Now is there nothing lacking to make me the happiest man in the world (say, of all men).

Exercise 97 (B)

1. We did not doubt that the prisoners would be spared.
2. We believe it to be impossible that the Germans should defeat the Britons, French, and Belgians fighting together.
3. It cannot be denied that it is better for an army to be sent with all speed for quelling the barbarians.
4. It is quite impossible that you do not love me, you who have so often risked your life to save mine (say, incurred danger to save me).
5. Socrates, when on his trial for impiety, said it ought not to be doubted that the sun and the moon were gods.
6. We cannot help but admire one who preferred to die rather than not to tell the truth.
7. The citizens, besieged now for more than fifteen months, were all but dying of hunger and disease.
8. There was no one but knew that the man had often lied before, and who did not believe that he was lying then.
9. How many are there (use *Quotusquisque*) who do not love themselves more than other men?
10. With this barbarous people, no considerations human or divine stand in the way of their breaking faith with their allies, if they can reap any advantage thereby.
11. No one is so old that he does not think he can live for a year more.

Exercise 98 (C)

My uncle used often to go before daybreak to finish his morning work. Then returning home he would devote what time remained to study. Often after a meal, if he had any spare time, he would lie in the sun, read a book, mark it,¹ and make extracts.² For he used to read nothing without making extracts; he used indeed to say that no book was so bad but there was good in some part

¹ adnoto.

² excerpo.

of it. All this he did in the midst of his other toils and the din of the city. On a journey, as if freed from other cares, he was at leisure for this one only. I remember being reprov¹ed by him for taking a walk.² 'You might', he said, 'have saved this time'; for he considered all time lost, which was not spent³ in study.

XXXII. DUM

DUM meaning *while* is regularly followed by the Indicative *Present*, even though the principal Verb is in the Past, and even in Oratio Obliqua.

Dum per silvam erro, leonem vidi. While wandering through the wood I saw a lion.

Dixit se, dum per silvam errat, leonem vidisse. He said that, while wandering through the wood, he saw a lion.

NOTE. It should be noted, however, that this Present is used only when the *Dum* clause covers a longer period than the principal verb. When the Principal clause and the *Dum* clause cover the *same period*, we find the same tense used in both :

Dum ego vigilabam, dormiebat ille. While (during the whole time that) I watched, he slept.

DUM meaning *provided that, if only*, always takes the *Subjunctive*.

Oderint, dum metuant. Let them hate, provided only that they fear me.

DUM meaning *as long as, or until*, may be followed by the Indicative when FACTS only are contemplated, as :

Dum rediit filius, parentes mortuum putaverant. Until the son returned his parents had supposed him dead.

But if *aim* or *motive*, or anything outside the bare fact be implied, the *Subjunctive* becomes necessary :

Dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, in ancoris exspectavit. He waited at anchor till the rest of the ships should assemble there.

Exercise 99 (A)

1. While this was going on, the prisoners escaped.
2. While he slept, I held the rudder and guided the course of the ship. [Cicero.]
3. It happened that while walking in the Appian way, I met
4. He said that while sleeping a thief took away his clothes.
5. I am waiting till he speaks.
6. While trying to avoid Charybdis, he fell into Scylla.

¹ corripio.² ambulo.³ impendo.

7. He kept his mother at his house, while she lived.
8. The Britons fought bravely until their leader was killed.
9. You may go as far as Naples, provided you return before midnight.
10. He declared that while he was absent, an enemy had set fire to his crops.

Exercise 100 (B)

1. Until you returned, we had all supposed you had died somewhere in France.
2. I wanted to wait until you returned, but Cicero would not.
3. All these things I did, so long as it was permitted.
4. This brave young officer was killed while leading his men into battle.
5. Cicero said that, as in the case of a sick man, while there was life there was hope, so he himself had never ceased to hope, so long as Pompeius was in Italy.
6. Having waited until he could consult his colleague, when it was already far into the night he ordered the army to advance.
7. I am confident that, if only I am believed, you will be spared.
8. We have heard that while the generals were still discussing the matter in camp, the soldiers started.
9. The master wisely put off the punishment until another time, until his anger should cool down.
10. There are some who neglect all that is right and honourable provided only they can attain power.
11. While he slept within his tent, she smote a nail through his temples (*tempora*).

Exercise 101 (C)

While these things were going on among the barbarians, the Roman camp was in great danger. For the barbarians numbered fully three thousand men, all thirsting to avenge the death of Caractacus, while Labienus, in the absence of Quintus, had with him barely five hundred. None the less the Romans earnestly begged Labienus to lead them out against the enemy. Labienus, however, urged them to wait patiently until the remaining forces should arrive. He had no fear, he said, that Romans would be defeated by barbarians in fair fight; but the Britons were so

numerous that no small force even of Romans could despise them ; and the Roman victory would be more decisive if they waited till they could fight on more equal terms.

We have heard, however, that while the matter was being debated the barbarians made a sudden attack on the camp, and before any signal could be given there was a rush to arms, and fighting began in all parts. Fierce fighting went on until the approach of night brought the battle to a close. Of our men about ninety were killed or wounded, of the enemy over 200.

XXXIII. CUM

In such a sentence as ' I will do it when I can ', or ' He will come when he is able ', the English puts only the Principal verb in the Future tense ; but Latin, more accurate than English, puts *both* verbs in the Future.

I will do it when I can. Cum potero, faciam.

He will come when he is able. Cum poterit, veniet.

In such cases then, Cum (less correctly written Quum) is followed by the Future Indicative. But observe carefully that the Future *Simple* will be used only if the action of the subordinate verb coexists with that of the principal verb. If the action of the subordinate verb *is completed* before that of the principal verb begins, then the Future *Perfect* must always be used ; as :

When you stop talking nonsense, I will reply.

Cum nugari destiteris (fut. perf. indic.), respondebo.

When he has finished his work, he may go.

Cum opus confecerit, abire licebit.

When used with Imperfect or Pluperfect, CUM nearly always takes the *subjunctive* mood. It generally means ' when ' or ' since ', and, so used, is one of the commonest conjunctions in Latin. But it may also mean ' although ', and the context alone can decide when the sense requires this meaning.

Quae cum cognovisset, domum rediit. When he heard this he went back home.

Quae cum ita sint. Since this is so.

Antonium imitari cum cuperent, non tamen poterant. Though they wanted to be like Antonius, they could not.

(The use of CUM with the Subjunctive to translate a Past

Participle *Active* has already been referred to in the Chapter on Participles and the Ablative Absolute.)

There are, however, three cases (though they are comparatively rare) in which *Cum* followed by Historic tenses takes the *Indicative* :

(1) When *Cum* = *Quoties* (as often as, whenever) (*Cum* Frequentative) :

Cum a Catone laudabar, vel reprehendi me a ceteris facile patiebar. Whenever I won praise from Cato, I did not mind even blame from the rest.

(2) When *Cum* = *Quamdiu* (so long as), or *Ex quo tempore* (from the time when) :

Cum aeger eram, Romae manebam. When I was ill, I remained at Rome.

Nondum tres anni sunt, cum finitum est bellum. It is not yet three years from the time when the war was finished.

(3) When the clauses are inverted, so that the *Cum* clause is virtually principal ; as

Iam ver appetebat, cum Hannibal castra movit. Spring was already approaching, when Hannibal moved his camp.

NOTE. When ? (interrogative) is *Quando*, never *Cum*.

When did you come ? *Quando venisti ?*

I asked when he came. *Rogavi quando venisset.*

Exercise 102 (A)

1. When he saw his cavalry routed, Pompeius ordered the army to retreat.

2. When the baby is asleep the maid will be allowed to depart.

3. Since these things were so, the general ordered his troops to advance.

4. Although they knew well that they would all be slain, the Spartans refused to leave their post.

5. When you have become older, without doubt you will also become wiser.

6. When we reach Athens we shall ascertain the truth.

7. This being so, we must at once return home.

8. Having returned about the ninth hour, we found a robber in the house.

9. Though greatly desiring to return to my native land, I was not able.

10. At the time when you receive this letter, I shall already have reached Sicily.

Exercise 103 (B)

1. When you are gone there will be no one for me to talk to.

2. When we see that the swallows have returned, we know that summer is at hand.

3. Although he knew the hope of victory was small, the general resolved to fight.

4. When I was a child, I both spoke and thought as a child ; when I became a man I put away childish things.

5. We had not yet advanced five miles when we espied the enemy crossing the river.

6. Scarcely had I left home with my two children, when a violent storm arose : this being so, what was I to do ?

7. Worthy of much praise was Piso, who, though he had been severely wounded, did not cease to hurl javelins against the enemy.

8. When Britons value wealth more than freedom, it will be all up with our Empire.

9. Take care of your health, and when you reach Athens be sure to write me a long letter.

10. Which of the poets can tell us when the Golden Age will return ?

Exercise 104 (C)

When I was quite a small boy my grandfather used to tell me many stories of the exploits of the Romans in ancient times ; and as a young man, when I had leisure from work, I used often to read of their brilliant victories both in Italy and in foreign lands. I have also a vivid recollection of two occasions on which they suffered crushing defeat—one at the hands of Hannibal at Cannae, and the other when they were beaten by the Goths at Adrianople. In this battle the Emperor Valens with 45,000 men had developed an attack on the great laager in which the Goths lay encamped, arrayed in the customary formation of Roman

hosts—with the legions and cohorts in the centre, and the squadrons on the wings. The fight was raging hotly all along the barricade of wagons, when suddenly a great body of horsemen charged in upon the Roman left. It was the main strength of the Gothic cavalry, which had been foraging at a distance ; and when it received news of the fight, it had ridden straight for the battlefield, and fell like a thunderbolt on the exposed flank of the Imperial host. There was a considerable number of squadrons guarding the Roman flank, but they were caught unawares ; and when some were ridden down and others trampled under foot, the rest fled disgracefully. Then the Gothic horsemen swept down on the infantry of the left wing, rolled it up, and drove it in upon the centre and reserve. So tremendous was their impact, that the legions and cohorts were pushed together in hopeless confusion. The massacre which followed is indescribable. The Emperor himself with all his chief officers and 40,000 men were left on the field ; the army of the East was almost annihilated, and was never again its old self.

XXXIV. *CONDITIONAL SENTENCES*

If it lightens, it also thunders.

If I see a fly, I kill it.

If we catch the traitor, we will put him to death.

If it rained, we used not to play.

If he was in that ship, he was drowned.

The above sentences merely state that a certain event or happening is followed by a certain result. The 'if' clause, or Protasis, gives no hint or suggestion as to whether the thing in question is *likely* to happen or not ; the writer in no way implies that he regards the thing as probable or improbable ; he merely states that *if* the thing happens, the result will follow. '*if*' clauses of this type are called *open conditions*, and the mood used in Latin is the *Indicative* in both clauses.

Now contrast with the above the following sentences :

1. If he were to come, I would talk to him.

If he were to manage the business well, he would become a rich man.

2. If he were here now, I should be talking to him ; or
 If he had been here now, I should have been talking to him.
 If it had been raining now, we should not have been playing.
3. If he had come yesterday, I should have talked to him.
 If I had had anything, I should have given it.

In the above sentences something more seems to be hinted or implied than is actually stated.

In (1) the protasis 'If he were to come' suggests that the coming is probable, or at any rate possible ; the condition *may* be fulfilled, though it is open to doubt. (It is as if the speaker said, 'Mind, I don't say that he *will* come').

The time referred to is the *future*, but the Latin uses the *present* subjunctive in both clauses.

In (2) the protasis 'If he had been here now' clearly implies that he is *not* here now ; and 'If it had been raining now' clearly implies that it is *not* raining now ; in other words, the condition is *unfulfilled*.

The time referred to is the *present*, but the Latin uses the *imperfect* subjunctive in both clauses.

In (3) the protasis 'If he had come yesterday' clearly implies that he did *not* come ; and 'If I had had anything' implies that I did *not* have anything. Here again the condition is *unfulfilled*, but in this case the time referred to is the *past*, and the Latin uses the *pluperfect* subjunctive in both clauses.

These results may be tabulated as follows :

CONDITIONS WITHOUT IMPLICATION (or OPEN CONDITIONS) have the *indicative mood* in both clauses ; the Tense according to the meaning.

CONDITIONS WITH IMPLICATION have the *subjunctive mood* in both clauses.

If the Condition	and the time referred to is :	Latin uses the
(1) <i>may</i> be fulfilled	Future	Present
(2) is <i>unfulfilled</i>	Present	Imperfect
(3) is <i>unfulfilled</i>	Past	Pluperfect

The IF clause is called by grammarians the Protasis, the main clause is termed the Apodosis.

The examples given above will be thus translated into Latin, and may be regarded as types of the Conditional Sentence in its various forms :

WITHOUT IMPLICATION (or OPEN CONDITIONS) :

If it lightens, it also thunders. *Si fulgurat, etiam tonat.*

If I see a fly, I kill it. *Si muscam video, interficio.*

If we catch the traitor, we will put him to death. *Si proditorem ceperimus (future perfect indicative) occidemus.*

If it rained, we used not to play. *Si pluebat, non ludebamus.*

If he was in that ship, he was drowned. *Si in nave illa fuit, periit.*

NOTE. In the first, second, and fourth of the above examples the word IF is practically equivalent to 'as often as', or 'whenever' (quoties) : this is a sure sign that the 'Si' in the Latin will be followed by the Indicative Mood.

WITH IMPLICATION :

1. If he were to come here, I would talk to him. *Si huc veniat, colloquar.*

2. If he $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{were} \\ \text{had been} \end{array} \right\}$ here now, I should $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{be} \\ \text{have been} \end{array} \right\}$ talking to him. *Si hic nunc adesset, colloquerer.*

3. If he had come here yesterday, I should have talked with him. *Si huc heri advenisset, collocutus essem.*

NOTE 1. Observe that Conditionals with Implication are those which contain the word *Would* or *Should* in the Apodosis.

NOTE 2. 'If . . . not' is generally expressed by NISI.

'If perchance' is SI FORTE, 'If only' SI MODO.

Exercise 105 (A)

OPEN CONDITIONS

1. If you say that, you are wrong.
2. If you said that, you were wrong.
3. If you say that, you will be wrong.
4. If you acquit the one, you must acquit the other also.
5. Whoso (say, if any one) is worthy of praise, him the Muse forbids to die.
6. If you met Cato, you met a clever man.
7. If you come to Rome, you will repent it.

8. If you love me, tell me where you have been absent these ten days.

9. Unless they retreat, they will be cut off to a man.

10. If he does not change his mode of life, he cannot possibly live long.

Exercise 106 (B)

'It now rests with you, Callimachus, either to enslave Athens, or, by assuring her freedom, to win yourself an immortality of fame, such as not even Harmodius and Aristogeiton have acquired. For never, since the Athenians were a people, were they in such danger as they are in at this moment. If they bow the knee to these Medes, they are to be given up to Hippias, and you know what they then will have to suffer. But, if Athens comes victorious out of this contest, she has it in her to become the first city of Greece. Your vote is to decide whether we are to join battle or not. If we do not bring on a battle presently, some factious intrigue will disunite the Athenians, and the city will be betrayed to the Medes. But if we fight before there is anything rotten in the state of Athens, I believe that, provided the gods will give fair play and no favour, we are able to get the best of it in the engagement.'

(CREASY, *Fifteen Decisive Battles of the World.*)

Exercice 107 (C)

(THE CONCLUSION OF A LETTER)

Thus, my friend, I have laid before you my sentiments upon this subject, but I shall readily abandon them, if not agreeable to yours. But, should you dissent from me, I beg you will communicate to me your reasons. For, although I ought to yield, in this case, to your more enlightened judgement, yet, in a matter of such consequence, I would rather receive my conviction from argument than authority. If therefore you are of my opinion in this matter, a line or two in return, intimating your concurrence, will be sufficient to confirm me in the justness of my sentiments; on the contrary, if you should think me mistaken, I beg you to give me your objections at large. Yet, has it not somewhat the air of bribery, to request only a short letter if you agree with me, but to lay upon you the burden of a very long one, if you should be of a different opinion? Farewell.

XXXV. *CONDITIONS with IMPLICATION*

Exercise 108 (A)

1. If he were to manage the matter well, he would become rich.
2. If he were managing the business well, he would be growing rich.
3. If he had managed the business well, he would have become rich.
4. If he were here now, he would be a great help to us.
5. If I had had anything, I would have given it.
6. If he were to come here, he would find out what an object of hatred he is to our townsfolk.
7. Had you not laughed, I should have supposed you angry.
8. If you did not boast so much, people would think more of you.
9. If you had said that, you would have been wrong.
10. If you would resolve to drink no wine, you would be doing a service to your country.

Exercise 109 (C)

' I am gratified to find that the jury have arrived at the only conclusion which rational men could arrive at in such a case, and with no more time spent in deliberation than was necessary to consider the case of each man separately.

' You have been found guilty, on the clearest evidence, of a dangerous and concerted attack on society. If organizations of this kind were permitted—if lawless bodies of men, organizing themselves with the discipline of a military force, were permitted to go about the country interfering with honest men—there could be no safety for any one in the community. If any man in this city had been told of the state of affairs which has now long existed in that part of the country, he could scarcely have believed it. It would hardly have been thought possible that six or seven hundred men should encamp close to the king's highway, for the purpose of preventing honest men from going to work—much less should capture, bind them as prisoners, and hold them as such.

' Let any one contemplate what may follow if this kind of

thing is permitted. There would be an end of liberty and safety ; but the law exists for the protection of all, whether high or low, in the community, and those who take part in proceedings of this kind must expect to have every man's heart hardened against them.'

XXXVI. MIXED CONDITIONS

Exercise 110 (A)

1. If there is smoke, can any one doubt that there is also fire ?
2. If this should happen, I should be greatly grieved.
3. He was a faithful friend, and if ever I was in trouble he would comfort me.
4. If the reserve troops had come up, the city would by now have been taken.
5. If you know what is right, why do you do what is wrong ?
6. Had it not been raining, we should have been playing now.
7. Had not Faunus lightened the blow, I should have perished.
8. If I asked him a question, he used always to answer.
9. If you catch the traitor, put him to death without delay.
10. If he really repented of his crimes, he would not be living among such abandoned men.

Exercise 111 (B)

1. But time would fail me, if I tried to relate it all now.
2. If you had been believed, I should have been pardoned.
3. If you were at the war, I should feel that I also ought to go.
4. If you were asked your view on prohibiting strong drink (*merum*) altogether, what would you say ?
5. If the prisoners were in the building at that time, they must have perished in the ruins.
6. If you help me I shall be rejoiced ; if not, I shall not take it ill.
7. If a man were selling a house, would he point out all its faults ?
8. I would write you a longer letter, did I not know that you will be here within three days.
9. Had that been so, I don't know what I should have done.

10. If he had promised to come, I do not doubt that he would have been here by now.

11. What good would follow this if this were done, what harm, undone?

Exercise 112 (C)

Once, when Hecataeus was marching with Alexander's army towards the Red Sea, one of their guides was a Jewish horseman named Mosollam, who seems to have rivalled Robin Hood in archery. As they went along, one of the augurs who accompanied the army, in order to divine the luck that was to come to them, told them all to stand still while he observed the flight of a certain bird. 'If the bird flies on,' he said, 'it will be better for the army to march on; but if the bird flies back again, the army will have to march back.' Upon this Mosollam drew his bow and shot the bird. The augur and those who believed in his divinations were naturally very indignant; but Mosollam only laughed and said, 'What is the use of asking this unlucky bird which way you are to march, when he did not even know what would happen to himself? If he had been able to foretell the future, he would have kept away from this place, lest Mosollam the Jew should shoot him'.

(MISS BRAMSTON, *Judaea and her Rulers*: adapted.)

XXXVII. ORATIO OBLIQUA

Speech reported in the First Person, i.e. in the actual words of the speaker, or 'Direct Speech', is called in Latin *Oratio Recta*; while speech reported in the Third Person, or 'Indirect Speech', is called in Latin *Oratio Obliqua*. The term is most commonly used of speeches of some length, but every short sentence containing an Indirect Statement, Question, or Command, affords an instance of *Oratio Obliqua*. With these the student is already familiar, and will remember that

Indirect *Statements* are put into Accusative and Infinitive.

Indirect *Questions* are put into the Subjunctive.

Indirect *Commands* are put into the Subjunctive (with or without *ut*). These may accordingly be regarded as three of the Rules for *Oratio Obliqua*.

A further point must now be carefully noted, viz. : ALL SUBORDINATE Clauses, relative or otherwise, which in O. R. take the Indicative, are in O. O. changed to the *Subjunctive*.

Hence the Indicative Mood finds no place in O. O. ; and the reason is that in O. O. an author is stating nothing as a fact, but is merely recording the statements, views, demands, &c., of some one else. If an author writes

Amisit puer pecuniam quam pater dederat (the boy lost the money which his father had given him),

he virtually vouches for the statement both that the boy lost the money, and that his father had given it to him ; hence the verbs, both in the Principal and in the Subordinate clause, are in the Indicative Mood. If on the other hand the author writes : Dixit Tullius puerum pecuniam amisisse quam pater dedisset, the writer merely records the statements of Tullius, without himself vouching for their truth. Hence the Principal verb of the former sentence is here thrown into the Infinitive, and the Subordinate verb into the Subjunctive, and the whole forms an Oratio Obliqua dependent on the verb *dixit* (which introduces the O. O., but does not form part of it).

Almost any verb of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, &c., except *inquam* (the *verba sentiendi et declarandi*), may serve to introduce an O. O. ; often a Noun is used, as Fama est (There is a report that), and not infrequently a narrative changes from O. R. to O. O. *without any introductory word at all*. Even in English such a change to Reported speech (helped out perhaps by inverted commas) is occasionally made when the meaning is unmistakable. E.g. Smith came up in a towering rage ; ‘ Why had I borrowed his bat without asking ? ’ The sentence is quite intelligible even without the words ‘ said he ’, and Latin lends itself still more readily to such a change to the O. O. without introductory verb, as the transition is at once marked by the difference of mood and tense.

Every one who has heard a speech and afterwards read a Report of it in the Third Person, knows what is meant by the change from Direct to Indirect Speech (O. R. to O. O.) ; and if the student will make himself familiar with the changes made in passing from the Direct to the Indirect (or the converse) *in*

English, he will have but little difficulty in making a corresponding change in Latin. Common sense will guide him. A comparison of the following passages will be instructive :

Direct.

' I am quite well,' said he, ' and
am going to Naples, where
I have many friends.'

Oratio Recta.

Bene valeo, inquit, et Neapolim
eo, ubi multos habeo amicos.

Indirect.

(He said) he was quite well,
and was going to Naples,
where he had many friends.

Oratio Obliqua.

(Dixit) se bene valere, et Nea-
polim ire, ubi amicos multos
haberet.

OBS. You may notice, if it will help you, that the tense of the *Principal* Verbs in the *Oratio Obliqua* (*valere* and *ire*), is the same as in the *Recta* ; while the tense of the *Subordinate* Verb (*haberet*) is changed from Present to Past. But such considerations are not really necessary, as all difficulties of tense disappear if we turn the sentence to the *Obliqua*, using *Accusative* and *Infinitive*, in *English*, before translating into Latin. (He declared himself to be well, and to be going to Naples, where he HAD many friends.)

Let us take another simple instance.

Direct.

Where thou goest, I will go.

Oratio Recta.

Quocumque tu ibis, ego ibo.

The *Indirect*, if we suppose the words spoken by a woman to a man, will be (She said that) Wheresoever he went, she would go.

Let us now turn the *Indirect English* to the *Accusative* and *Infinitive* form, and it becomes : She declared herself to be about to go wheresoever he went. Wooden and awkward as such *English* may appear, it enables us at once to see that the *Oratio Obliqua* will in Latin run as follows :

Oratio Obliqua

(Declaravit) Quocumque ille
iret, se quoque ituram.

The results so far obtained may be embodied in the following Rules :

I. All *Principal* Verbs are changed from the *Indicative* in *O. R.* to the *Infinitive* in *O. O.*, retaining their original tenses (i.e. in *Indirect Statements*, not of course in *Questions* and *Commands*).

2. All Subordinate Indicatives in O. R. are changed into Subjunctives in O. O., the tense being according to the meaning.

NOTE 1. For the sake of vividness the Present Subjunctive is occasionally used instead of a Past tense, and in Livy the use of the Perfect in place of the Pluperfect is a mannerism.

A further exception to the Rule is found in Subordinate Clauses introduced by *Dum* (=while) which allows the *Present Indicative* to be retained even in Oratio Obliqua.

NOTE 2. Relative Clauses in which *Qui* = 'et is', 'nam is', &c., may be *virtually Principal* clauses, and subordinate only in form. In that case they may take the Accusative and Infinitive construction, instead of the usual Subjunctive, e.g.:

He said he should soon return to Baiae, than which there was no more beautiful city in the world.

Dixit se mox Baias rediturum, qua urbe *nullam* in orbe *esse pulchriorem* (instead of *nulla esset pulchrior*).

Or to take an instance from Livy:

Fama est aram esse in vestibulo templi, cuius (=et eius) cinerem nullo unquam moveri vento (instead of *cinis moveatur*).

There is a story that there is an altar in the temple porch, on which (=and that on it) the embers are never moved by any wind.

Such a usage is, however, rare, and may be disregarded by a beginner.

NOTE 3. Parenthetical comments of the Reporter naturally have the verb in the Indicative, e.g. in:

Scripsit ad me Balbus se cum amico suo Quinto, qui Ciceronis erat frater, in Britanniam profecturum,

Balbus wrote to tell me that he was starting for Britain with his friend Quintus, who was a brother of Cicero,

the Indic. *erat* shows that the Relative clause is not part of what Balbus wrote, but an explanation on the part of the author.

The changes required in the Pronouns, temporal adverbs, &c., are for the most part so obvious as to need no explanation; e.g.:

What I declare *to-day*, you will believe *to-morrow*, becomes in O. O.

What *he* declared *that day*, they would believe *on the day following*.

and so on.

O. R. Quod ego hodie affirmo, id vos cras credetis.

O. O. Quod ipse illo die affirmaret, id eos postero die credituros.

Exercise 113 (A)

1. He says that the consul is dead.
2. We believed that the consul was dead.
3. There was a report that the city would be captured on the following day.
4. Tullius considered that Rome was the greatest city of the world.
5. He said that Rome was not built in a day.
6. The praetor said that those who went to Rome ought to do as Romans did.
7. I declare that those who think that are wrong.
8. He said that the prisoners who had been seized in the Temple ought to be spared.
9. Caius replied that no traitor ought to be pardoned.
10. Plato said that Socrates, who had done nothing wrong, was not rightly condemned by the Athenians.

Exercise 114 (B)

1. The Oracle declared that Socrates was the wisest of men, for no other reason than that he knew that he knew nothing.
2. He told me that his brother was ill, and had gone to Marseilles where his mother lived.
3. The orator exhorted the citizens to be of good courage ; they ought (he said) not only to hope for prosperity, but also to endure adversity with stout hearts.
4. Tullius used to say that he was never less alone than when alone.
5. Is it not admitted by all that every patriotic citizen (say, each best citizen) ought to fight for his country in its hour of need ? (use *laboro*).
6. Diogenes used to point out (*disputo*) how far he surpassed the King of the Persians in his mode of life and fortune ; to himself nothing was wanting, to the other nothing would ever be enough.
7. There is a story that out of the whole temple the shrine and image of the god alone remained unharmed by the enemy's weapons.

8. The witty historian Tacitus has written that certain persons at last believe the stories which they themselves have invented.

9. I said I thought he ought to finish the work he had begun in his youth.

10. The old man, overcome with grief, replied that that was impossible; the colours, he said, were long since dry; the artist's hand was changed.

11. The young man said he had to look after an aged mother and two sisters; under the circumstances he was not ashamed to prefer remaining at home to being at the front.

Exercise 115 (C)

On gaining this victory Caesar's first act was to send word to the chiefs of the conquered state, that though by the laws of war he was justified in putting them to death, yet by an act of mercy he was allowing them to live. He then gave his soldiers three hours' rest, and having struck camp commenced his return march. Half way on the road he was met by mounted couriers from the lieutenant in charge of the Roman camp, informing him that during his absence the garrison had passed through a period of much peril. The enemy (he was informed) had taken the opportunity to assail the Roman position in great force, and the defenders, few in number and compelled to maintain their defence against a constant succession of fresh men, had become much exhausted. Numbers had been wounded by the showers of arrows and other missiles launched by the assailants, and when the messengers had left, the position was still critical.

News so alarming acted like magic on his wearied troops, and before sunrise Caesar was back in camp.

Exercise 116 (C)

The German general's reply to these requests contained little that was relevant, but dilated at large on the subject of his own virtues. He had crossed the Rhine, he declared, not at all in self-interest, but solely on the urgent summons of his allies; and it was only the great expectations held out to him, and the considerable sums paid him by way of instalment, that had induced him to leave his ancestral home and to part from kith

and kindred. As to the tribute, he levied that by right of conquest, as the recognized burden always laid by the victor on the vanquished. It should be remembered that it was not he who began hostilities with the French, but they with him. They had gathered in their thousands, with the avowed object of crushing him and his people, every state in France contributing its share of warriors ; they had proudly planted their camp right over against his own as a direct challenge to combat ; and in a single battle the whole mighty host had been shattered and driven from the field. If they wanted to repeat the experiment, he was ready to abide by the result of a second encounter ; if they wished to continue living in peace, then it was unreasonable to raise difficulties about the tribute, which up to that moment they had regularly and ungrudgingly paid.

XXXVIII. *COMMANDS and QUESTIONS* *in ORATIO OBLIQUA*

COMMANDS

Commands, whether positive or negative, pass in O. O. into Imperfect Subjunctives.

O. Recta.

Beware lest any harm ensue.

Cave ne quid damni eveniat.

Either learn or leave.

Aut disce aut discede.

Tell no lies and fear nothing.

Neve mentitus sis, neu quidquam metueris.

O. Obliqua.

Let him beware lest any harm ensued.

Caveret ne quid damni eveniret.

Let him either learn or leave.

Aut disceret aut discederet.

Let him neither lie, nor fear anything.

Neve mentiretur neu quidquam metueret.

QUESTIONS

Questions requiring an answer (as is usual when the verb in O. R. is in the second person) pass in O. O. into the Subjunctive (Imperfect or Pluperfect).

O. Recta.

Quid cognovistis ?
What have you heard ?

O. Obliqua.

Quid cognovissent ?
What had they heard ? (he asked).

But Questions which require no answer, but imply their own answer (sometimes called Rhetorical Questions, and especially common in Livy), are expressed in O.O. by the Accusative and Infinitive (like the direct statements to which they are practically equivalent), e.g. :

O. Recta.

What can be more disgraceful ?
(Nothing).

Quid turpius esse potest ?
Are we downhearted ? (NO).
Num tristes sumus ?

O. Obliqua.

What could be more disgraceful ?

Quid turpius esse posse ?
Were they downhearted ?
Num se tristes esse ?

NOTE. The Deliberative Subjunctive is retained in O.O., but is naturally in a Historic tense, e.g. *Quid faciam ?* What am I to do ? becomes *Quid faceret ?* What was he to do ? (From which it is evident that an expression like *Quid faceret* is ambiguous, as it is the Oblique both for *Quid facio* and for *Quid faciam*, or *Quid facit* and *Quid faciat*, and might mean either What was he doing ? or, What was he to do ? But the context will always make the meaning clear.)

PRONOUNS IN INDIRECT SPEECH are apt to appear awkward and ambiguous in any language : in none more so than in English, in which a reporter is often driven to make his meaning clear by adding, in brackets, the name of each person referred to, e.g. :

Direct Speech.

My own opinion is that you did not believe me.

Indirect Speech.

His (Mr. Brown's) own opinion was that he (Mr. Jones) had not believed him (Mr. Brown).

Equidem non puto te mihi credidisse.

Se quidem non putare illum sibi credidisse.

Here the distinction between *se* and *illum* gives the Latin a distinct advantage over the English. Yet it does not always remove the difficulty. The general rule is that *se* refers to the speaker. But occasionally *se* or *sums* will be wanted

to refer to the subject of some subordinate verb, and then *ipse* may be used by way of contrast to refer to the speaker. Thus :

Direct.

Do not doubt our loyalty.
Ne de nostra fide dubitaveris.

But :

Indirect.

Let him not doubt their loyalty.
Ne dubitaret de fide *sua*.

Direct.

Doubt neither your own
strength nor our loyalty.
Neve de tuis viribus dubita-
veris, neu de fide nostra.

Indirect.

Let him doubt neither his own
strength nor their loyalty.
Neve de viribus *suis* dubitaret,
neu de *ipsorum* fide.

On the other hand, we occasionally find *ipse* added to *se* or *suis*, to make the pronoun refer to the *subordinate* subject, and not to the speaker, e.g. :

Direct.

Not only do all good patriots
despise you, but it cannot
well be but that you despise
yourself.
Non solum te contemnit civis
optimus quisque, sed vix fieri
potest quin te ipse con-
temnas.

Indirect.

Cicero declared that not only
did all good patriots despise
him, but it could not well be
but that he despised himself.
Declaravit Cicero non solum
eum contemnere optimum
quemque civem, sed vix fieri
posse quin se ipse contem-
neret.

Exercise 117 (A)

Put into Oratio Obliqua after a verb in a past tense :

1. Whatever you entrust to me I will carefully guard.
2. That Caius betrayed his country I never did believe and never will believe.
3. The more we are, the merrier we shall be.
4. I am reading the book which you gave me yesterday.
5. Do not go home to-day, but return to Naples with us.
6. When you come, I will tell you all.

7. Enter the battle, soldiers, with good courage, for the enemy will soon turn their backs.
8. How large is the house you have promised to give us ?
9. Have you not yet learned that the earth is round ?
10. I hope to come to Rome to-morrow, but fear I shall not be able to stay long.
11. Are we cowards ? have we ever turned our backs ?

Exercise 118 (B)

Put into *Oratio Obliqua* after a verb in a past tense :

1. All is over with the state ; I now advise you to save yourselves.
2. We remain ready at our posts, and will set out as soon as we receive your letter.
3. Despair neither of your own valour nor my watchfulness.
4. Why are we tarrying here ? will those achieve victory, who are willing to do nothing for themselves ?
5. Write to me as soon as possible, and let me know all you have heard on this matter.
6. Do you not know that where the carcass is, there the eagles will be gathered together ?
7. Whither are we setting out ? All our cavalry and all our nobility has perished ; the leaders of our state have been murdered by the Romans.
8. Learn these things from the very men who have escaped from the slaughter ; for my part, with my brothers and all my relatives slain, I am prevented by grief from telling the things that have been done.
9. Since these things are so, Catiline, proceed whither you have begun ; depart at length from the city ; the gates are open ; start at once.
10. I refuse to buy life with cowardice ; and if I die for my country, I shall meet death with a cheerful mind.
11. Is not the life more than meat, and the body than raiment ?
12. Must not all die ? and is not freedom to be valued more than life itself ? with good heart, then, resist the enemy.

Exercise 119 (C)

To these complaints and apprehensions the general replied as follows (O. Obliqua): Fellow-soldiers, I greatly marvel that as old campaigners, experienced in many wars and never yet defeated, you should display such anxiety when confronted by an enemy unskilled and barbarous, though many times as numerous as ourselves. Do not suppose that I am either indifferent to or ignorant of the present situation. I have already sent spies in all directions, and am well aware of what is being done in the various camps of the enemy. So far from being confident of success, it is clear that the enemy no longer entertain the slightest hope of victory. Why have they never shown any disposition to attack us even when at a disadvantage from forest or from marsh? For my part, I am persuaded that they will never dare to oppose the Roman army in the open field. But in the event of their being such madmen as to venture an attack, what is there to fear? Why distrust your own prowess or my diligence? Be not cast down, but be of good cheer. You yourselves know the value of constancy and courage in the hour of peril; for once before, after beginning with unreasoning dread of unarmed insurgents, did you not end by utterly defeating a formidable army, and that after it had been flushed with victory? Now return to your several tents, and sleep peacefully till the morning. Shortly after daybreak we will advance and drive the already frightened enemy from the field.

XXXIX. *CONDITIONALS in ORATIO OBLIQUA*

I. OPEN CONDITIONS

Open Conditions, as we have already seen, take the Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis. In the *Oratio Obliqua* the verb in the Apodosis (as the Principal clause) will naturally be in the Infinitive; and the verb in the Protasis (as a subordinate clause in O.O.) must be in the Subjunctive. The *tense* of the sub-

ordinate verb will depend on the tense of the verb introducing the O. O. Thus :

O. R. Si vales, bene est. If you are well, all is well.

O. O. Dicit si valeas, bene esse. He says that if you are well, all is well.

Dixit si valeres, bene esse. He said that if you were well, all was well.

But it must be carefully noted that if the Protasis contains a *Future*, the idea of futurity disappears in O. O. from the Protasis, and is preserved only by the Apodosis (as in the English) :

O. R. Si quid habebit, dabit. If he has anything, he will give it.

O. O. Dicit si quid habeat, se daturum esse. He says that if he has anything he will give it.

Dixit si quid haberet, se daturum esse. He said that if he had (or, should have) anything, he would give it.

Or again :

O. R. Si mentitus eris, errabis. If you lie, you will be in the wrong.

O. O. Dicit te, si mentitus sis, erraturum esse. He says that if you lie, you will be in the wrong.

Dixit te, si mentitus esses, erraturum esse. He said that if you lied, you would be in the wrong.

[But : Dixit te, si mentitus esses, erraturum *fuisse*. He said that, if you *had* lied, you would *have been* in the wrong.]

NOTE. From the above it will be seen that in the Protasis of the Obliqua we find the Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive replacing the Future Perfect Indicative (mentitus eris) of the Recta. One might perhaps have expected the Latin to keep the idea of futurity by writing 'mentiturus sis' for the Primary, and 'mentiturus esses' for the Historic ; but their idiom was not so ; in fact it was much more like the English, in which it will be noticed that the Protasis never has the idea of futurity at all, even in the Recta.

2. CONDITIONALS WITH IMPLICATION

It will be remembered from the Chapter on Conditionals in the earlier part of the book, that Conditional sentences *with Implication* (i.e. which seem to imply something with regard to the fulfilment or non-fulfilment of the condition) have their verbs, both in Protasis and Apodosis, in the Subjunctive already.

In the Oratio Obliqua, then, the Protasis will remain unchanged, except perhaps in *tense*; and the problem is, How can the *Apodosis* be made to express the Obliqua of Conditionals of this type, through the required variations of tense?

The method adopted was the combination of the Future Participle with one of the Infinitives of the verb SUM; but the following table of typical instances will perhaps make the matter clearer than any amount of explanation. The Table shows on the left the three types of Conditional *with Implication*, and on the right the corresponding Oratio Obliqua, dependent firstly on a verb in the Present tense, and secondly on a verb in the Past:

CONDITIONALS WITH IMPLICATION

O. Recta.

If the man came, I would talk to him.

Si veniat homo, colloquar.

If I had anything, I would give it.

Si quid haberem, darem.

If I had remained, I should have perished.

Si mansissem, periissem.

O. Obliqua.

Dicit se, si homo veniat, collocuturum esse.

Dixit se, si veniret homo, collocuturum esse.

Dicit se, si quid haberet, daturum esse.

Dixit se, si quid haberet, daturum fuisse.

Dicit se, si mansisset, periturum fuisse.

Dixit se, si mansisset, periturum fuisse.

When the verb in the Apodosis is *Passive*, or has no Future Infinitive (as e.g. most Inceptive verbs), the periphrases Futurum esse ut (*fore ut*) and Futurum fuisse ut are generally used with the appropriate tenses (but exceptions are made in the case of Posse and Velle, which are allowed to refer to the future without periphrasis):

O. Recta.

Unless precautions are taken, Rome will be captured.

O. Obliqua.

(A voice was heard saying that) unless precautions were taken, Rome would be captured.

Nisi provisum erit, Roma capietur.	(Audita vox est) futurum esse, nisi provisum esset, ut Roma caperetur.
Had not Caesar arrived, the town would have been lost.	(They thought that) had not Caesar arrived, the town would have been lost.
Nisi Caesar advenisset, oppidum amissum esset.	(Existimabant) nisi Caesar advenisset, futurum fuisse ut oppidum amitteretur.
The sun's heat will diminish. Solis calor decrescet.	(Docent philosophi) fore ut solis calor decrescat.

CONDITIONALS SUBORDINATE TO CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES OR INDIRECT QUESTIONS

A similar periphrasis of the Future Participle and the *Subjunctive* of *sum* must be used if a Conditional sentence becomes subordinate to a Consecutive clause or forms part of a Dependent Question, e.g. :

So fierce a storm arose that the little boat would have perished had it not returned. *Tanta orta est tempestas ut nisi rediisset parva ratis, peritura fuerit.*

I do not know what I should have done if I had been there. *Si adfuissem, nescio quid facturus fuero.*

Exercise 120 (A)

Convert the following from Direct to Indirect Speech, both in Primary and Historic Sequence, supplying a verb of saying, asking, or commanding.

1. If you wish for peace, you must prepare for war.
2. Whoso is wise will ponder these things.
3. I will do it if I can.
4. If you go to Rome in August, you will repent it.
5. If he set out in that ship, without doubt he perished.
6. Unless the cavalry retreat, they will all be killed.
7. If the sailors were here now, they would be a great help to us.
8. Go on as you have begun ; all will doubtless turn out well.

9. Why have you come so soon? return at once to your several homes.

* 10. I was so tired that, had I sat down, I should immediately have fallen asleep.

Exercise 121 (B)

Turn into *Oratio Obliqua* after a verb in the Past :

1. I was so astounded at the fellow's impudence that had I not been very angry I should have laughed aloud.

2. What am I to do? I have no money and no friends.

3. I cannot be persuaded to return home until I have seen my brother.

4. I would have done what I was told if I had been able, but Caius threatened to beat me if I did not obey him.

5. Although for some time I have not been very well, I will come if I can; but if not, my brother, who is spending August with me, will come.

6. Why do we any longer linger here? what do toil and watchfulness avail? let us at once break up our camp, and depart to our several homes.

7. If you annoy us with a war, you shall soon learn that to attack us is one thing, to win victory another.

8. In my opinion the town will not easily be captured, nor will the severe cold abate before the spring.

9. Witness (to what I say) is every shore, every foreign nation, every sea. For what place in all the sea has had so strong a garrison as to be safe? Who has sailed on it that did not commit himself to the risk of death or slavery? What province have you held free from pirates through these years? What ally have you protected?

Exercise 122 (C)

Socrates pursued his task of instructing his fellow-citizens, and reached old age before any evil befell him. Then, at the age of seventy, he was prosecuted as an atheist and corrupter of youth, and was put to death. It is strange that if the Athenians really thought him dangerous they should have suffered him so long. Moreover, if he had wished, he could easily have escaped. If

he had given an undertaking to teach no more, it is generally agreed that he would have been acquitted. And even then, there is no doubt that, had he adopted a different tone, he would not have been condemned to death.

Exercise 123 (C)

Socrates, when accused of corrupting the youth, and not recognizing the same gods as the Athenians worshipped, preferred to die rather than to abandon what he regarded as the life-work allotted him by God. (O.O.) If, O Athenians, he says, you promise to acquit me on condition that I abandon my search for truth, I will reply: I thank you, Athenians, but I will obey God, who, as I believe, set me this task, rather than you, and so long as I have breath and strength I will never cease from my occupation with philosophy. I will continue my practice of accosting whomsoever I meet, and saying to him, Are you not ashamed of setting your heart on wealth and honours while you have no care for truth and making your soul better? I know not what death is—it may even be a good thing, and I am not afraid of it. But this I do know, that it is a bad thing to desert one's post, and I prefer what *may* be a good to what I *know* to be bad.

XL. CAUSAL CLAUSES

Causal Clauses are introduced in Latin by *Cum* (*Quum*), *Quia*, *Quod*, *Propterea quod*, *Quoniam*, *Quandoquidem*, *Quando* (rarely); or by the Relative Pronoun, either alone, or strengthened by the addition of *Ut*, *Utpote*, or *Quippe*.

Of the above *Cum* (since) is always followed by the Subjunctive.

The remaining particles are followed by the Indicative when stating a *real reason* (vouched for by the writer), but by the Subjunctive when stating an *alleged reason* (suggested by some one else). In the latter case they are virtually in Oblique Oration and the Subjunctive is the natural mood to use.

Examples.

Filium suum necari jussit Torquatus, quod contra imperium in hostem pugnaverat. Torquatus bade his son be put to death because he had engaged the enemy against orders. (Here the writer presents the reason as the *real* reason; had he written 'pugnavisset' the meaning would have been 'Because, as Torquatus alleged'.)

Socrates accusatus est quod corrumperet juventutem. Socrates was accused on the ground that he corrupted the youth. (Here the *alleged* reason only is given, and the writer does not vouch for its truth.)

NOTE. Hence a rejected reason is introduced by *Non quod* (or, *Non quia*) with the Subjunctive (as being the suggestion of another person); while the corresponding affirmative is given by *Sed quia* (or *Sed quod*) with the Indicative.

Hoc facio, non quod jucundum sit, sed quia honestum est. I do this, not because it is pleasant, but because it is right.

A Relative clause with its verb in the Subjunctive is often used in a causal sense, especially if the Relative is preceded by *Ut*, *Utpote*, or *Quippe*, e. g. :

Felix esse debet,	{	qui ut qui utpote qui quippe qui	}	multos habeas amicos.	{	You ought to be happy, who have (seeing that you have) so many friends.
----------------------	---	---	---	--------------------------	---	--

Verbs of Emotion (Joy, Sorrow, Praise, Blame, Thanks, Complaint, Surprise, Anger, &c.), many of which may be followed by the Accusative and Infinitive construction, may also be followed by a clause introduced by *quod* to explain the ground of the emotion; the verb being in the Indicative or the Subjunctive according as the actual or the alleged reason is given, as explained above. (At any rate the use of the Subjunctive suggests an Oblique, or virtually Oblique, relation; and when Cicero writes (*Fam.* i. 9, 18) *Laetatus sum quod mihi liceret recta defendere*, we may translate, 'I rejoiced *to think to myself* that I was free to uphold the right'.)

NOTE. Just as in English we occasionally hear such a loose or illogical statement as 'He went to bed because he said he was tired' instead of 'He went to bed because (as he said) he was tired'; so in Latin we some-

times find the *quod* illogically introducing the verb of saying or thinking, as :

Impetrare non potui, quod religione se impediri dicerent (Cic.). I could not get permission, because they said they were prevented by matters of religion.

Exercise 124 (A)

1. The boys were afraid because they had seen a wolf.
2. He was accused and put to death for aiming at the throne.
3. Since these things are so, we will remain here.
4. As you have promised, you must keep your word.
5. As one who had received many kindnesses at his hands, I immediately went to call on (use *video*) Cicero.
6. Was not Aristides banished for the (alleged) reason that he was just beyond measure ?
7. Panaetius praises Africanus for having been abstinent.
8. Themistocles used to walk about at night because he could not get (*capere*) sleep.
9. Under those circumstances we thought it our duty to return home.
10. The ambassadors thanked Caesar for sparing them.

Exercise 125. (B)

1. I have no fault to find with old age (use *incuso*).
2. It will never occur to me to be sorry for not having been untrue to myself (use *descisco*).
3. As one that has to-day begun to be in love, I am fairly good-for-nothing (*satis nequam*).
4. My mother blamed me for not writing four letters to her in the whole year.
5. I shall be glad to speak for your brother, not because he has always been a friend to me, but because I know him to be innocent.
6. Caesar complained of their making war on him after voluntarily (*ultro*) sending hostages and begging peace.
7. Inasmuch as you do not pity us, you cannot expect us to pity you.
8. The praetor had warded off violence from the exiles, not

because he wished them to escape, but because he did not wish them to perish with their cause not pleaded (*causa indicta*).

9. I remember that Hortensius used to boast of never having been engaged in (*intersum*) civil war.

10. If you are angry with me because I defend the man you accuse, why should I not be angry with you for accusing the man I defend?

11. Our ancestors would not allow a slave to be questioned under torture against his master, not because the truth could not be discovered, but because such a course seemed degrading (*indignum*).

Exercise 126 (C)

It was the perpetual object of Socrates as much as possible to sink his own personality. He wished his arguments to have all the weight they might deserve, and his authority to count for nothing. Those who have considered the meaning of his famous irony know that it was not by any means what such a writer as Cicero supposes, a humorous device to make his conversation more racy and the confutation of his adversaries more unexpected and decisive. He professed to know nothing because he wished to exalt his method at his own expense. He wanted to give men not truths but a power of arriving at truths, and therefore what he found it most necessary to avoid was the tendency of his hearers to adopt his conclusions out of mere admiration for his wisdom and love for his person rather than rational conviction. By his determined and consistent abstinence from all dogmatic assertion he gradually trained men to believe in a method which, if only carefully used, discovered truth or verified it as surely, within certain limitations, in the hands of an ordinary man as in those of a sage. Deservedly he gained the greatest personal admiration, but his highest claim to it was the trouble he took to avoid it, and the tenacity with which he laboured to set the tranquil and methodical operations of the intellect in the search of truth above the blind impulses of feeling and personal admiration.

(SIR JOHN SEELEY, *Ecce Homo*.)

XLI. CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

Clauses introduced by the word 'though' are called CONCESSIVE.

The commonest Latin equivalents for 'though' are: *Etsi*, *Quamquam*, and *Quamvis*, but we also find *Etiamsi*, *Tametsi*, *Quantumvis*, *Licet*, *Ut*, and *Cum* (*Quum*) used with this meaning.

If it is implied that what is conceded is a fact, the Concessive clause has its verb in the Indicative, and is commonly introduced by *Etsi* or *Quamquam* (or in familiar speech, *Tametsi*).

But if the point conceded be purely imaginary or hypothetical, the verb is in the Subjunctive, and the clause more often introduced by *Quamvis*, *Licet*, *Ut*, or *Cum*.

Examples.

Quamquam saucius *erat*, fortiter pugnabat. Though he was wounded, he was fighting bravely.

Etsi nihil pro certo *sciebat*, tamen omnia suspicatus est. Though he knew nothing for certain, yet he suspected all.

Licet Solomone *sis* sapientior, rem non geres. Though (lit. Allowed, or Granted that) you be wiser than Solomon, you will not succeed.

Quamvis irati *simus*, tacendum erit. However angry we may be, we must keep silence.

NOTE 1. In the Classical period, we find *Quamquam* regularly with the Indicative, and *Quamvis* with the Subjunctive. (In later Latin there was a tendency to reverse the process, and we find Tacitus, Juvenal, and the younger Pliny regularly using the Subjunctive after *Quamquam*, while *Quamvis* is found more often with the Indicative.)

NOTE 2. *Etsi*, *Etiamsi*, and *Tametsi*, take Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the general principles which regulate the use of *si* (if).

Exercise 127 (A)

1. Though he was seventy years old, he walked thirty miles in one day.

2. However daring the deed may be, a prompter (*auctor*) will not be lacking.

3. Cicero himself, though he was in very delicate (*tenuis*) health, did not leave himself even night time for rest.

4. Although he was very poor, he seemed always to be happy.

5. Although we be poor, we can be of service to our country.

6. Even though he had committed many crimes, there were some who pitied him.

7. Even though you ask me again and again, I will never tell you.

8. Though the boys were troublesome (*molestus*), the master was unwilling to chastise them.

9. However false you have been, you are none the less dear to me.

10. Granted that the danger be great, it is nevertheless our duty to go.

Exercise 128 (B)

1. Although it is always difficult to tell about the future, yet you can sometimes come near it by guessing.

2. Cornelius, though unjustly envied, tries to do good to those that hate him.

3. Although a man be poor, he may be happy ; and however rich a man may be, he may be miserable.

4. Even if my disposition did not bid me, necessity compels me to speak what is true rather than what is pleasant.

5. In spite of his many crimes, his disposition was such that he was loved and admired by many.

6. Notwithstanding that the snow was three feet deep on the top of the mountains, he contrived to cross the Alps in four days, and brought his army safely into Italy with the loss of about fifty men.

7. On hearing these reports, though he might easily have escaped from the country, he returned to London of his own accord and demanded a trial. He doubtless had good reason to hope that he would be acquitted, but in spite of his great influence among his fellow citizens, he was condemned and thrown into the Tower.

8. Though well aware of the motives underlying such statements, Caesar, to avoid the necessity of spending the summer in that district, ordered their chieftain to come to him with two hundred hostages.

9. That man I envy, even though his body is one with the sands of the sea, and though his grief was greater than he could bear, and his life, in men's judgement, a failure.

Exercise 129 (C)

Though I speak with the tongues of men and of angels, and have not charity, I am become as sounding brass, or a tinkling cymbal. And though I have the gift of prophecy, and understand all mysteries, and all knowledge ; and though I have all faith, so that I could remove mountains, and have not charity, I am nothing. And though I bestow all my goods to feed the poor, and though I give my body to be burned, and have not charity, it profiteth me nothing. Charity suffereth long, and is kind ; charity envieth not ; charity vaunteth not itself, is not puffed up, doth not behave itself unseemly, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil ; rejoiceth not in iniquity, but rejoiceth in the truth ; beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things.

(ST. PAUL, 1 Corinthians xiii.)

XLII. *CONDITIONAL SENTENCES of COMPARISON*

'As if' may be translated into Latin in various ways, as *Ut si*, *Velut si*, *Tanquam si*, *Quasi*, or simply *Velut* or *Tanquam*.

The sentence 'He ran as if every post had been the winning-post' is clearly elliptical, and means 'He ran as (*he would have run*) if, &c.'. In other words, we have a Conditional sentence from which the Apodosis is omitted, though it is easy to supply it from the Protasis.

In such sentences, the clause introduced by 'as if' has its verb in the *Subjunctive Mood* if the Comparison is purely imaginary (as in the instance above), and the *Tense* follows the rule of *Sequence* rather than the ordinary rules of Conditional sentences.

Examples.

Tantus patres metus cepit velut si iam ad portas hostis esset (not *fuisset*). The senators were seized with as much fear as if the enemy had been already at the gates.

Hostibus resistamus, milites, tanquam si urbem nostram defen-

damus. Let us resist the enemy, soldiers, as if we were defending our own city.

But when the Comparative clause begins with 'As' or 'Just as', rather than 'As if', and is meant to state *actual fact*, the *Indicative Mood* is used.

In such clauses Quasi and Tanquam may also be used, but we more often find Sicut, Aequè ac, Aliter ac (otherwise than), alius ac (other than), idem ac, &c.

Examples.

Quasi poma cruda vix evelluntur, sic vitam adolescentibus vis aufert. Just as unripe fruit is plucked with difficulty, so it is violence which wrests their life from the young.

Rem gessit sicut voluit. He managed the matter as he wished. Evenit res aliter ac speraverat. The matter turned out otherwise than he had hoped.

Exercise 130 (A)

1. The enemy turned their backs, as Caesar had foretold.
2. The citizens saluted Antony as if he had been consul.
3. The man was running just as if the Furies were pursuing him.
4. The matter has turned out as you always hoped.
5. The young man was walking with a stick, as though he was lame.
6. Have you finished the work as your father wished?
7. Why should we laugh and sing, as though we were happy?
8. As the tree falls, so will it lie.
9. The boys were working just as hard as if the master were present.
10. Could I do otherwise than I did?
11. So may I live as I love you.
12. Let us work as if our safety depended on that alone.

Exercise 131 (B)

1. Men fear to die, as children to go into the dark.
2. As we have sown, so shall we all reap.
3. Cicero said he had seized upon Greek literature as greedily as if he had been eager to sate (*explere*) a long-standing thirst.

4. I depart from life as if I were going from an inn, not as if I were leaving home.

5. Even though old age be not burdensomẽ, yet it takes away our freshness (*viriditas*).

6. It is impossible to believe that this is the same as that.

7. He is too high-minded (*humanus*) to remember wrongs.

8. We shall all be as delighted to have reached the end of the war, as if we ourselves had shared (say, been) in the toil and the danger.

9. His performance is not always in accordance with his promise.

10. He said he was too gentle by nature to be the murderer of an innocent child.

11. Watch, as if on that alone hung the issue of the day.

12. He bought the gardens at as great a price as Pythius desired.

13. He is too venturesome for us to trust.

Exercise 132 (C)

FROM A LETTER TO A FRIEND

I know the cause which prevented your arriving in Campania before me. But, although absent, it seems as if you were already here with all your possessions, such an abundance of town and country produce has been offered me in your name, all of which, though with great coolness, I have nevertheless accepted. For not only did your servants beg me to do so, but I feared you would be angry with me and with them if I had not done so. For the future, if you don't put a limit to this, I shall. And already I have announced to your servants that, if they bring so many things another time, they will have to take them all back again. You will say it behoves me to use what is yours as though it were my own. Certainly, but I am for being just as *careful* of it as if it were my own.

XLIII. PRONOUNS : SE, SUUS, IPSE, &c.

AWKWARDNESS AND AMBIGUITY IN THE USE OF PRONOUNS

The correct use of pronouns in Latin is a matter of much difficulty. Notice in the first place how often pronouns, expressed in English, are in Latin merely *understood*.

He loves *his* father. Patrem amat.

On seeing *his* daughter, he praised *her*. Filiam cum vidisset, laudavit.

A pronoun will not be necessary in the Latin except to express emphasis or avoid ambiguity.

By accident he wounded *his own* son. Filium suum casu vulneravit.

He loves *your* father. Patrem tuum amat.

SE, SUUS

With a view to the correct use of the pronoun *se* and its corresponding adjective *suus* the following points should be carefully noted :

(1) *Se* is *Reflexive* (i. e. it refers to the Subject of the sentence or clause).

(2) It may be used in any Gender or Number, but it has *no Nominative Case*, and is never anything but *Third Person*. Hence it could not be used to translate

He himself said so. (Nominative.)

I wounded myself. (First person.)

Wash yourselves. (Second person.)

In translating all such sentences we must use IPSE (adj.) in agreement with the personal pronoun expressed or understood. (Ipse dixit. Me ipsum vulneravi. Vos ipsos lavate.)

The pronouns *he*, *him*, *his*, &c. are often ambiguous in English (especially in Reported Speech). The Latin distinction between *se* and *eum* (or *illum*) diminishes but does not remove the ambiguity.

In the *simple* sentence, *se* and *suus* refer to the Principal Subject: Gladio suo se interfecit. He slew himself with his own sword.

So too when used in the Accusative and Infinitive Construc-

tion, *SE* refers regularly to the Subject of the *Principal* Verb ; *Pueros se sequi iussit*. He ordered the boys to follow *him*. But where there is no danger of ambiguity, the *Se* may refer to the subject of the *Infinitive* : *Pueros se lavare iussit*. He ordered the boys to wash *themselves*. But if a sentence be *Complex* (i.e. contain a Subordinate, as well as a Principal, clause) we need some guidance to know when *se* and *suus* should be used to refer to the principal, and when to the subordinate, subject. Only familiarity with Latin authors will really make it clear when it is correct to use *se*, when *is* or *ille*, and when *ipse*, in a subordinate clause. But the following principles may be laid down :

(a) When the Subordinate Clause represents the speech or thought of the Principal subject, *se* and *suus* will be used in that clause to refer to the Principal subject.

(N.B.—This is virtually *Oratio Obliqua*, and the verb will therefore be in the Subjunctive.) But

(b) When the Subordinate Clause does *not* represent the thought of the Principal subject, but is merely a comment added by the writer, then the Principal subject will be referred to as *is* or *ille* in the Subordinate clause, and *se* and *suus* will refer to the subject of the Subordinate clause.

Examples.

- (a) *Pueros oravit ut se sequerentur*. He besought the boys to follow him.
- (b) *Tam carus erat omnibus, ut sequi eum usque ad mortem vellent*. So dear was he to all, that they were ready to follow him even to death.

NOTE 1. To understand the matter more clearly, consider the sentence :

Caius was praising a slave who had saved him from danger.

If, in this sentence, the Subordinate clause (' who had saved him from danger ') represents the thought or speech of *Caius*, in other words if the clause is to be regarded as giving *Caius'* own motive for bestowing praise, then we must translate :

(a) *Laudabat Caius servum, qui se ex periculo eripuisset.*

But if the Subordinate clause is merely a comment or explanation added by the writer (*Caius was praising a slave ; this slave, as I happen to know, had saved him from danger*), then the translation will be :

(b) *Laudabat Caius servum, qui eum ex periculo eripuerat.*

Or again, consider the sentence :

The father urged his son to use the sword which old Nestor had given him when a boy

Note carefully the *ambiguity* of the English. Not only is it open to doubt whether the subordinate clause (' which old Nestor had given him as a boy ') represents the speech and thought of the father, or is merely a comment made by the writer ; but it is further open to doubt whether the ' him ' of the subordinate clause refers to the father or the son. Hence the sentence might be translated in at least three ways :

- (1) *Persuasit pater filio suo ut gladio illo uteretur, quem sibi puero Nestor senex dedisset.* The father urged the son to use the sword, which (as the father told him) old Nestor had given him (the father) when a boy.
- (2) *Persuasit pater filio suo ut gladio illo uteretur, quem ei puero Nestor senex dedisset.* The father urged his son to use the sword which (as he reminded him) old Nestor had given him (the son) when a boy.
- (3) *Persuasit pater filio suo ut gladio illo uteretur, quem ei puero Nestor senex dederat.* The father urged his son to use the sword which (as I the writer am able to state) old Nestor had given him (the father or the son—the Latin and the English are alike ambiguous here) when a boy.

NOTE 2. In *Oratio Obliqua* the general rule is that *se* and *suus* refer to the speaker :

(*Rogavit*) *cur de sua vigilantia dubitarent ?* Why did they distrust his watchfulness ?

But when *suus* is wanted to refer to the subject of some subordinate verb, we sometimes find *ipse* used antithetically to refer to the speaker :

Cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia dubitarent ? (*Caes. B. G.* i. 40). Why did they distrust their own valour or his care ? (See *Oratio Obliqua*, pp. 112, 113.)

Sometimes we find *se, suus*, used in sentences where the Subject is indefinite or impersonal :

Contentum suis rebus esse maximae sunt divitiae (*Cic.*).

To be content with one's lot is the greatest riches.

Perventum ad suos erat (*Livy*).

So also such phrases as *Sui poenitere*, Self-reproach ; *Sibi placere*, Self-satisfaction. Compare ' Pure religion and undefiled is this . . . to keep *himself* unspotted from the world ' (where a modern author would write *oneself*).

Common uses of *se, suus*, are : *Sua sponte*, Of his own accord ; *Sui compos*, Master of himself (his faculties) ; *Suo tempore*, At the right time ; *Suo loco*, In the right place ; *Fiducia sui*, Self-confidence ; *Quantum in se fuit*, To the best of his power.

Se and *suus* are very frequently combined with *quisque*. (Note that, except for special reasons, e. g. versification, the Reflexive stands first.)

Ad suum quisque tabernaculum redeunt. They return to their several tents.

Sua quemque fraus et suus terror vexat. It is his own sin and his own fears that trouble a man. (Cic.)

The phrase *inter se* often supplies the place of the Reciprocal Pronoun, which is wanting in Latin, e. g. *Inter se amant*, They love one another. (The same meaning may be expressed by *Alius alium*, *Alter alterum* (of two), or by repeating the noun.)

IPSE

IPSE (self) is the distinctive pronoun, used to separate a subject or object from all others. It may be used in any Person and in any Case, and is used with various shades of meaning :

Ipsa venit. She herself (and none other) came,
She came of her own accord,
She is the very person who came, &c.

Frequently its force may be represented by the English word 'very' :

Illo ipso die. On that very day.

Adventu ipso me delectas. Your very presence charms me. It is often used to emphasize *se* (and *suus*), in the Nominative if the Subject is emphatic, in the Oblique cases if the Object is emphatic :

Se ipse laudat. He (and no other) praises himself.

Se ipsum laudat. He praises himself (and no other).

Non egeo medicina ; me ipse consolor (Cic.). I need no medicine ; I am my own comforter.

When used to emphasize *meus, tuus, suus*, &c., it is added in the Possessive Genitive :

Tua ipsius diligentia, Nostra ipsorum diligentia. Through your own, our own, diligence.

Exercise 133 (A)

1. He wounded himself with his own hand.
2. During those years many of us used to till our own fields.

3. She herself no longer believed that her son survived.
4. The prisoners kept looking stealthily at one another.
5. They slay many, the rest they compel to retreat.
6. He bade the soldiers return to their several tents.
7. He pitched his camp beneath the very walls of the town.
8. They seemed not to be accused by others, but to be accusing themselves.
9. With my own eyes I saw it, with my own ears I heard it.
10. He bade the Helvetii return to their own country.
11. To the best of his powers he strove to benefit his fatherland.
12. He ordered the boys to dress themselves at once, and follow him.

Exercise 134 (B)

1. Self-praise is no recommendation.
2. How often do we blame others for that which has happened through our own fault !
3. The Belgians besought Caesar to consider their interests and not permit them to be plundered by their enemies.
4. The wise man will feel (*affectus erit*) towards his friend as he feels towards himself.
5. The general intended, he said, to fight at his own time, not at that of the enemy.
6. Taking his seat, he asked them why they repented of their loyalty, or doubted his own good intentions.
7. It is the mark of a noble spirit to be no less moved by the troubles of a friend than by one's own.
8. Cassius was bitterly reproaching the slave who, to save himself, had brought him into this danger.
9. Your mother justly blames you for not writing more than two letters to her during the whole year.
10. They were afraid that with his cunning and inconstant nature he might desert them and seek once more the favours of his countrymen.
11. He replied that he would never be persuaded to betray his country for gold.

12. The Gods help those who help themselves ; make it ever your aim, therefore, to help yourself.

13. When asked what advantage he reaped from his goodness, he replied that virtue was desirable in itself and for its own sake.

Exercise 135 (C)

The story goes that Damon and Phintias were so devoted to one another that when the tyrant Dionysius had appointed a day of death for one of them, and he who had been doomed to die had asked for a few days for the purpose of commending his family to the care of friends, the other went bail for his appearance, on the understanding that if *he* did not return he would himself have to die. When however he had returned to time, the tyrant, marvelling at their devotion, begged that they would enrol him as a third in their friendship.

Exercise 136 (C)

Fearing that the Belgians were plotting a revolt, Caesar entrusted to the Senones and the other Gauls who were neighbours to the Belgians, the business of discovering what was going on among them, and of reporting on the matter to him. Thereupon the Belgians, realizing that Caesar was aware of their schemes, with all haste sent to Caesar envoys to treat of peace, who spoke to the following effect : They entrusted themselves and all that was theirs to the power of the Romans. One request they made, one misfortune they deprecated ; viz. that if by chance, in accordance with his customary kindness and mercy (of which they themselves had heard from others) he had decided that their people was to be spared (say, saved), he would not deprive them of their arms. Nearly all their neighbours, they said, were hostile to them, and envied their prowess ; and from these they could not defend themselves if their arms were given up. Caesar received the envoys courteously, but immediately intimated that he could on no account treat with them concerning peace unless they had first given up their arms.

XLIV. SOME

SOME may be translated into Latin by *Aliquis*, *Quispiam*, *Nescio quis*, *Quidam*, *Sunt qui*, *Nonnulli*, &c., according to the shade of meaning intended.

ALIQUIS (-QUI)

ALIQUIS means Some one or Some as opposed to No one or None.

Dixerit aliquis. Some one will say (no definite person thought of).

Aliquid novi. Something new.

Nemo est sine aliqua virtute. No one is without *some* virtue.

Est aliquid . . . in solida moriens ponere corpus humo (Ovid, *Tr.* i. 2, 53). It is *something* to lay one's dying body on the solid earth (rather than in a watery grave).

QUISPIAM

QUISPIAM is far less common than *Aliquis*, but is used in much the same sense (except that *Quispiam* never implies importance).

Dixerit quispiam. Some one will say.

nescio quis (QUI)

nescio quis (adj. *Qui*) is used as a single word, an indefinite pronoun followed by the Indicative; i.e. its import is 'Some one' rather than 'I know not who'. Yet it implies that the person or thing alluded to is not definitely known to the speaker. 'It does not merely decline to name, as *Quidam* does, but asserts ignorance' (Bradley). Expressing greater *Vagueness* than *Quidam*, it often suggests indifference or contempt as applied to persons, and hints at the mysterious or indefinable as applied to things.

Agricola nescio quis. Some farmer fellow.

Boni nescio quomodo tardiores sunt (Cic. *Sest.* 47, 100).

Good folk are somehow or other rather slow.

Et subito gemitus . . . videbar nescio quos audisse. Suddenly some mysterious moaning fell upon my ear (Ovid, *Met.* vii. 838).

QUIDAM

QUIDAM means 'a certain', or simply 'a'. It expresses some definite person or thing (thereby differing from *Aliquis*, *Quispian*, and *Nescio quis*) ; one who is known to the speaker, but whom there is no need to describe further.

Civis quidam Neapolitanus. A certain Neapolitan.

Quidam de collegis nostris. One of my colleagues (I need not tell you which).

Quidam is also often used to modify an expression, or to introduce figurative or metaphorical language, being thus equivalent to 'a kind of', or 'so to speak' (*ut ita dicam*) (cf. Greek *τις*). Such modification is common in Latin where it would be unnecessary in English, inasmuch as English falls into figurative language more often and more easily than Latin.

Moveor . . . singulari quadam humanitate et misericordia (Cic. *Cat.* iv. 6). I am stirred (so to speak) by a strong impulse of kindness and pity.

Mira quaedam inertia. A curious torpor.

Virtutem duram et quasi ferream esse quandam volunt (Cic. *Lael.* xiii. 48). They would have virtue to be hard, and (as it were) a thing of iron.

Est quaedam virtutum vitiorumque vicinia (Quint.). There is an affinity of a sort between virtues and vices.

NONNULLUS, NON NEMO, NONNIHIL

These words also mean 'some' (lit. 'not none'), and are frequently used in *Litotes*—a playful understatement, as when we say ' (last but) not least '.

Nonnihil, ut in tantis malis, est profectum (Cic. *Fam.* xii. 2. 2). Considering the difficulties, not a little progress has been made.

Non nulli amici. No lack of friends.

N.B. *Aliquot* and *Aliquantum* are similarly used in *Litotes*.

SUNT QUI

SUNT QUI, and ERANT QUI, are used (like the Greek *εἰςὃν οἷ*) with the meaning 'Some there are (were) who', and are followed by the Subjunctive.

Sunt qui ei credant. There are people who believe him.

Sunt qui non habeant, est qui non curat habere (Hor).

Some there are who have not, one there is who does not care to have.

SOME . . . OTHERS

The Latin for 'Some . . . others' is *Alii . . . alii*.

Alii fossas complebant, alii defensores vallo depellebant (*Caes. B.G. iii. 25*). Some began filling up the trenches, others tried to hurl the defenders from the rampart.

Exercise 137 (A)

1. Somebody told me so.
2. I observed that somebody or other was laughing.
3. There are some who say that this is not true.
4. Some were wise and some were foolish.
5. There were present in the theatre some (certain) Greeks from Corinth.
6. I hope you will bring me something (in the way) of consolation.
7. I noticed that he was somewhat perturbed.
8. Somebody or other had prevented his going out.
9. If some one will help me, I will cut down this tree.
10. Some fled into Etruria, others remained in Latium.
11. There were some among the prisoners who had not eaten meat for twelve months.

Exercise 138 (B)

1. Some one may say, There is nothing new in all this.
2. Some may be able to do all these things, others, I know, can do none.
3. Surely it is *somebody's* business to see that the gates are shut.
4. There are some who think that friendships are to be sought only on account of their usefulness.
5. If you will come and see me some time, I will tell you the whole story.
6. Though something is accomplished, much remains.

7. Do make me out (*fac*) to be somebody, since I can no longer be the man I was and the man I might have been.

8. Some men are born great, some achieve greatness, and some have greatness thrust upon them.

9. It is just as necessary that soldiers should be kept in ignorance of some things, as that they should know others (cf. Tac. *H.* i. 83).

10. It is to be noted that some grounds (*loci*) are more suitable for some inquiries, others for others (Cic. *Top.* xxi. 79).

11. Rumour does not always err : sometimes it even makes the choice. (Note. The sentence is from Tacitus, and refers to candidates for a vacant post.)

Exercise 139 (C)

There are some who declare that he fell in the country of Beneventum, where he had left his camp with his lictors and their servants to bathe, while the enemy chanced to be concealed amid the willow plantations on the banks, and was cut down naked and unarmed, defending himself with the stones rolled down by the stream. Others again relate that by the advice of the augurs he had gone half a mile from the camp to expiate in an open space the portents above mentioned, and was intercepted by two squadrons of Numidian horse which, as it happened, were occupying the position. So little agreement is there, eminent and renowned as was the man, both as to the place and the manner of his death.

There are various accounts too of his funeral. Some tell us that he was buried by his own men in the Roman camp ; others that Hannibal raised his funeral pile at the entrance of the Carthaginian camp. This latter is the more generally accepted story. It is further added that the troops marched under arms, with Spanish dances moving their weapons and bodies according to the fashions of their respective tribes, while Hannibal himself celebrated his obsequies with every honour which acts and words could testify.

XLV. ANY

The word ANY is used with various senses or 'connotations', being made to cover far more ground at one time than another.

(1) When used quite indefinitely and without emphasis (as it is after the words *If, Whether, Lest, &c.*) it is to be translated by the Indefinite *quis* (adj. *qui*).

Examples.

Si quid habet, dat. If he has anything, he gives it.

Num quis irascitur infantibus? Is any one angry with infants?

Quo quis honestior, eo beatior. The more honourable a man is, the more happy he is.

NOTE 1. *Quis* in this sense cannot begin a sentence; it is as it were attached to the *Si* or *Num*, &c., so as to form one word.

NOTE 2. *Aliquis* is used after *Si* with a slightly different stress. Observe the shades of meaning; *Si quis*, if any one; *Si aliquis*, if some one; *Si quisquam*, if any one at all.

NOTE 3. *Ecquis* (Is there any who) is used with much the same force as *Num quis*, in Direct Questions.

NOTE 4. The forms *Quis, qua, quid*, are substantival; the corresponding adjectival forms being *Qui, quae* or *qua, quod*. In *Si quis* orator, we must regard the *Quis* as a substantive, and the *Orator* as in apposition; cf. *Nemo poeta* (No poet). This is the usual construction with *Persons*, so that we should write *Si quis agricola*, If any farmer, but *Si qui fundus*, If any farm. (But the rule is not rigid.)

NOTE 5. In the same way we find *Si quando* for If at any time, *Si quo* for If anywhere (lit. If any whither), &c.

The rule then is that after *Si, Nisi, Ne, Num*, and after *Quo* or *Quanto* with Comparatives, *any* is to be translated by *Quis*.

(2) But *any* is often used in a more emphatic sense, equivalent to *any at all*; and the Latin for this is *Quisquam* (adj. *ullus*).

Quisquam and *Ullus* are used in *Negative* or *Virtually Negative* Sentences. Sentences are called *Virtually Negative* when they imply some sort of negation; e.g. when they are questions expecting the answer *No*; or when they contain the words *Vix, Aegre, Parum, Sine, &c.*; or when they are comparative, as *The Captain was braver than any of his crew* (which implies the negation that *None of his crew was as brave as himself*).

Examples.

Negavit se quemquam vidisse. He said he had not seen any one (at all).

Vix quisquam hoc facere potest. Scarcely any one can do this. Fortior fuit navis rector quam quisquam nautarum.

Solis candor inlustrior est quam ullius ignis. The sun's brightness is more dazzling than that of any fire.

NOTE 1. The use of *Quisquam* and *Ullus* (as of *Unquam*, *Usquam*, and kindred words) extends even further than this. The words are appropriate whenever there is, stated or implied, the question between *any at all* or *none*. Thus in the first two examples given above, if we wish to lay a slightly greater stress on the word *any*, we can write:

Si quicquam habet, dat. If he has *anything at all*, he gives it.

Num quisquam irascitur infantibus? Is *any one at all* angry with infants.

Observe the usage in the following examples from Cicero and Livy:

Si quisquam est timidus, is ego sum (Cic. *Fam.* vi. 14). If any one at all is timid, I am (the man).

Aut nemo, aut, si quisquam, ille sapiens fuit (Cic. *Lael.* ii. 9). Either no man in the world, or, if any one at all, he had a claim to wisdom.

Angor quicquam tibi sine me esse iucundum (Cic. *Fam.* vii. 15). I am distressed that you should find *anything* delightful without me.

Difficile est non aliquem, nefas quemquam praeterire (Cic.). It is difficult not to pass over *somebody*, wrong to pass over *any one at all*.

Nobis, nisi quod commisimus ut quisquam ex Cannensi acie miles Romanus superesset, nihil obici potest (Liv. xxv. 6). As for us, we are open to no reproach, unless it is that we allowed *any* Roman *at all* to survive the battle of Cannae.

NOTE 2. Observe carefully that *Nec quisquam* must always be written for 'And no one' (not *Et nemo*).

(3) A third use of *any* makes it equivalent to 'Any you like' or 'Every', as in Any man can do that. The Latin for this 'inclusive' *any* is *Quivis* or *Quilibet*.

Quivis hoc facere potest.

Quaelibet minima res. Any the most trifling circumstance (Cic. *Rosc. Am.* iii. 8).

Quemlibet, modo aliquem. Any one you like, provided it be somebody (Cic. *Ac.* ii. 43, 132).

NOTE. If the choice lies between two only, *Utervis* or *Uterlibet* should be used, as: *Utrumlibet* elige, Choose whichever of the two you like.

The contrast between *Quivis* or *Quilibet* on the one hand, and

Quisquam or *Ullus* on the other, is sometimes expressed by saying that *Quivis* and *Quilibet* INclude all, whereas *Quisquam* and *Ullus* EXclude all. The contrast is illustrated by the following examples :

Cuilibet promptum est gloriari se doctiorem esse quam *quemquam* e discipulis suis. It is open to any man to boast that he is more learned than any of his pupils.

Cuivis potest accidere quod *cuiquam* potest (Cic.). What can happen to any one at all, may happen to any one in the world.

NOTE. The distinction between Any-inclusive and Any-exclusive is apt to become a subtle one in English, as we use the one word with both meanings. Consider how, by a difference of *Intonation* (rather than of stress or emphasis) the word *any one* in the sentence 'I refuse to obey ANY ONE' may be made to mean 'any one and every one' (*cuilibet*) or 'any one at all' (*cuiquam*). In Latin the difference in the word used leaves no ambiguity, but in English the distinction, though possible to the human voice, is one which it is beyond the power of writing to express.

Exercise 140 (A)

1. Lest any of the prisoners should escape, he closed the gate.
2. A. If any one denies this, he is mistaken. B. Does then any one at all deny it ?
3. The braver any man is, the more gentle he is wont to be.
4. Take care that no woman hears this.
5. Is there any one here who can remember that disaster ?
6. They say that there is no longer any enemy in Africa.
7. If any man at all was happy, he was.
8. I asked whether any one had come before dawn.
9. You may go in any direction (*pars*) you like.
10. Does Justice ever harm anybody ?
11. Of these books you may read any you please.
12. Is there any one who doubts this ?

Exercise 141 (B)

1. A. If any one comes, be sure you say that I am not at home. B. Are you then expecting some one to call ? A. Not in the least ; if any one at all were to come, I should be surprised.

2. Can you believe that any poet ever wrote things so base ?
3. The wiser a man is, the less he thinks he knows.
4. He said that although he had not any money, he had never owed any man anything.
5. I knew that he was a brave man, and ready to encounter any danger whatever for his country's sake.
6. Could any one (he asked) deny that what he said was true ? Did they suppose that any other way of safety could be found ?
7. Why do you claim for yourself as a merit that which any one can do with ease ?
8. He said that he was as much a friend to his country as any of his fellow citizens.
9. However few themselves, they dare to encounter any number of armed slaves.
10. Philosophers have taught us that the better a man is, the happier he will be.
11. I wonder whether any one at all will read this book.

Exercise 142 (C)

A LETTER TO A FRIEND

DEAR CECIL,

It grieves me greatly that any man at all, most of all that you, should have thought me mean. My reason for not subscribing to your fund was nothing else than that I honestly thought that such a fund would do more harm than good. And if any one is qualified to speak on such a subject, surely I may claim to be so ; seeing that I have spent most of my life in working among the poor, and no one is better acquainted than I with the misery and the want that are to be found in the heart of a great city. Unfortunately I find that scarcely any one can understand that in matters of this sort another man can really take a different view from himself. Yet I would ask you, Will any one venture to say that I have ever begrudged help to a friend in need, or refused to help any one who was really unable to help himself ? But I have long since believed that whoever gives, without discrimination, to any beggar whatsoever that comes to his door, is really doing his best to increase the number of beggars and paupers in the world ; that it is the first duty of every man to help himself ;

and that no one has the right to take the fruit of one man's labour in order to help another who is unwilling to work on his own behalf ; in a word, that whosoever does anything to sever the connexion between human effort and the benefits that result from it, is tending to retard the progress of mankind.

Pray write to me soon, and assure me that you at any rate so far sympathize as to feel no resentment at my declining your request.

Yours sincerely,

H. S.

VOCABULARY

A

Abandon (in general sense), relinquo; to leave in the lurch one who wants my help, destituo; to quit place or person with whom I ought to stay, desero; to fail to be present where my presence is required, desum; to fail, or fall away from those I have hitherto supported, deficio (ab or acc.); descisco (ab).

(Of things) omitto; desisto (ab).

Abandoned (wicked), perditus.

Abide, maneo. **Abide by**, sto (abl.).

Ability, ingenium. To the best of his ability, pro virili parte.

Able, am, possum.

Abode, domicilium, sedes.

About in, abundo, circumfluo.

About (prep.), = concerning, de; = around, circum.

What do you think about this? quid de hac re sentis?

I was told about this, de his rebus certior factus sum.

He has many friends about him, amicos multos circum se habet.

(adverb), circum, circa, circiter; fere, ferme.

= intending to (future participle); he was about to use his sword, gladio usurus erat.

Above, supra (adv. or prep.).

Which I mentioned above, quod supra commemoravi.

Abroad (= out of doors), foris.

Absence, use participle of absum.

He condemned me in my absence, absentem me condemnavit.

Absent, am, absum.

Absolutely, plane, prorsus, or use superl. of adj. It is absolutely impossible, nullo modo fieri potest.

Abstain from, abstineo.

Abundance, copia, plurimum.

Abuse (verb), abutor.

(noun), maledicta (plur.).

Accept, accipio.

Acceptable, gratus; (gratus means deserving gratitude, as opposed to iucundus, causing joy); cf. *Cic.* Ista veritas etiamsi iucunda non est, mihi tamen grata est, your plain speaking, though not palatable, deserves my gratitude.

Access, aditus.

Accident, casus; **by accident**, casu, fortuito.

Acclamation, plausus.

Accompany, comitari.

Accomplish, conficio, efficio. Without accomplishing anything, re infecta.

Accord, of one's own, ultro, sponte sua (mea, tua, &c.).

Accordance, according, &c. In accordance with your deserts, pro meritis tuis.

I acted in accordance with my duty, perinde ac debui, feci.

To live according to nature, secundum Naturam vivere.

To form plans according to circumstances, consilia ex rebus capere.

According to Pliny, auctore Plinio.

According to the terms of the treaty, ex foedere.

Accordingly, itaque, igitur, quare; in exhortations, appeals, &c., proinde.

Account, On account of, propter, ob.

On no account, nullo modo, minime.

Take account of, rationem habere (with gen.).

Accuse, accuso, insimulo.

Accuser, accusator (or say, he who accuses).

Accustomed, be, soleo. Grow accustomed, consuesco (to accustom, assuefacio).

Accustomed to, assuetus ad.

With your accustomed caution, qua es prudentia, pro tua prudentia.

Ache, dolor, angor.
Achievements, res gestae.
Acquiesce, permitto.
Acquire, adipiscor, assequor, nanciscor.
Acquit, absolvere. Acquit of a capital offence, capitis absolvere.
Across, trans.
Act, ago, me gero. Act rightly, recte facio; act thus, haec facio.
Action, the hour for action, agendi tempus; by action, agendo.
 It is the action of a wise man (to do anything), sapientis est (aliquid facere).
Acts, acta, facta.
Actually, re, re vera, usu.
Adapted to or for, aptus ad, utilis ad.
Add, addo, adiungo. To this is added that, huc accedit ut (quod).
Address, adloqui, contionari, orationem habere, verba (apud populum) facere.
Adhere, (to a resolution) in eadem sententia (or, eodem consilio) manere.
Adjourn (trans.), dimitto; (intrans.), dimitti.
Administer public affairs, rempublicam administrare (or gubernare).
Administration, procuratio.
Admirably, egregie.
Admire, miror, admiror.
Admit, (let in) admitto, introduco; (confess) fateor, confiteor; (yield a point) concedo.
Adopt a plan, consilium capere, inire; rationem inire.
Adorn, orno.
Advance, progredior, procedo; signa fero.
Advanced (age), proventus.
Advantage, commodum, emolumentum, opportunitas. To be to the advantage of, usui esse, ex usu esse (with dat.).
Advantageous, utilis, opportunus.
Adverse, adversus, iniquus.
Adversity, res adversae.
Advice, consilium. By the advice of Tullius, suadente Tullio; against my advice, me dissuadente.
Advise, moneo (acc.), suadeo (dat.).
Advocate, auctor. To be an advocate of peace, pacem suadere. I am your advocate, te defendo.

Affair, res.
Affected, am, afficio, commoveor.
Affection, amor, studium.
Afflict (with), afficio. To inflict punishment on any one, supplicio aliquem afficere, or poenas de aliquo sumere.
Afford, praebeo.
Afraid, am, timeo, vereor, metuo; pertimesco (for construction, see chap. xxviii).
After, 1. (prep. or adv.) post. 2. (conj.) postquam, posteaquam, usually with perf. tense. The day after I started, postridie quam profectus sum.
Afterwards, postea, post. (See p. 47.)
Again, rursus, iterum; **Again and again**, identidem, saepenumero. **never again**, nunquam posthac (postea).
Against, contra. To march against the enemy, contra (or in) hostes. To speak against any one, orationem facere in aliquem. He fought against his will, invitus pugnavit; against my advice, me dissuadente.
 Against the stream, adverso flumine.
Age, aetas; old age, senectus; those of one's own age, aequales. In his old age, iam senex, or homo exactae aetatis. At an advanced age, iam proventa aetate. Thirty years of age, triginta annos natus.
Aggressive, take the, ultro bellum infero.
Aghast, obstupefactus.
Agitation, there is, trepidatur.
Ago, abhinc. (See p. 47.)
Agree with, consentio.
Agreed, it is agreed by all, inter omnes constat. It is agreed on by . . . , convenit inter . . .
Agreement, pactum; an agreement is come to, convenit. I am in agreement with, consensio cum.
Agriculture, agricultura, agrorum cultus.
Aid (noun), auxilium, opem. By your aid, opera tua. (verb), opem fero, subvenio, succorro (all with dat.).

Aid (verb), *cont.*

Send to the aid of, *submittere, subsidio mittere* (with dat.).

Aim at, *peto, appeto*. I make it my aim to . . . , *id ago ut* (with subj.).

Alarm, give the, *signum dare*.

Alarm (verb), *terreo*. **Be alarmed**, *timeo, metuo, &c.*

I have no fears for you, *Nihil tibi metuo*.

Alien (adj.), *externus*; (subs.) *peregrinus*.

Alike (adv.), *iuxta, pariter*. Remarkable alike for his ability and his bravery, *et ingenio et fortitudine insignis* (or, *vel . . . vel . . .*).

Alive, vivus. **Am alive**, *vivo*.

All, omnis, cunctus, universus.

Omnes, all without exception (opposed to *nemo* or to *unus*).

Cuncti, a stronger *omnes* (all together).

Universi, all as a body (opposed to *singuli*).

(*Omnis* in the sing. means every kind of; *cunctus* in the sing. means all as a whole, almost equiv. to *totus*).

All is lost (it is all over with), *actum est de*.

All the best men, *optimus quisque*.

All but, *modo non, minimum abest quin*. The city was all but captured, *minimum abfuit quin urbs caperetur*.

Allege, *dictitare*.

Allegiance, fides.

Alliance, societates; make alliance with, *societatem inire cum*.

Allow, sino, permitto, patior; (grant) *concedo*; (admit) *fateor*; it is allowed, *licet*.

Sino means allow passively (not prevent).

Permitto is allow actively (support).

Patior is allow from indifference (not interfere).

You are allowed to go, *licet tibi abire, or (ut) abeas*.

He allows the dogs to eat the body, *canibus corpus concedit edendum*.

I will not allow myself to . . . *Non committam ut . . .*

Allow, cont.

It is allowed by all, *Inter omnes constat*.

Ally, socius.

Almost, paene, prope; *fere* (in *Livy, ferme*).

Fere means 'about', 'more or less', and is used most often with adjectives and adverbs; *paene* and *prope* mean 'less, but coming near', and *paene* is commonly used with verbs.

Nearly every one, *omnes fere*; almost every day, *quotidie fere*.

Almost (all but) divine, *prope divinus*.

The house was almost destroyed, *domus paene deleta est*.

As almost always (generally) happens, *quod fere (plerumque) fit*.

Alone, solus. I am alone in doing this, *solus hoc facio*.

Along, secundum (following), *circa*. He led his forces along (following the course of) the river, *secundum flumen*.

Trees grow along (on either side of) the road, *circa viam*.

Already, iam.

Also, etiam, quoque. Note also the idiomatic use of *idem*.

Whatever is right is also expedient, *quicquid honestum est, idem est utile*.

Culpat me Tullius, idem laudat, T. blames, and also (in same breath) praises me.

Altars and hearths (hearth and home), *arae atque foci*.

Alter (trans.), *muto*; (intrans.), *mutor*.

Although, quamvis, etsi, licet, cum.

Altogether, (in negative sentences) *omnino*.

Always, semper.

Amazed, attonitus, stupefactus; *am amazed, miror*.

Ambassador, legatus.

Ambition, gloriae cupiditas; *animus gloriae cupidus*.

Ambush, ambuscade, insidiae.

Amiss, secus.

Among, apud, inter.

Amount, any, quantusvis.

Amuse, delecto.

Ancestors, maiores, avi.

Anchor (noun), ancora.

(verb trans.), ad ancoram (-as) deligare.

To lie at anchor, ad ancoram (or, in ancoris) stare; consistere.

To cast anchor, ancoras iacere.

To weigh anchor, ancoras tollere.

Anchorage, statio.

Ancient, antiquus, priscus, pristinus, vetus.

Antiquus means old and no longer existing; vetus, old and still existing.

Antiquus often implies approval of 'the good old times'.

Priscus means 'old fashioned', 'rarely seen now'.

Pristinus is 'in early times' as opposed to 'of the present day'.

According to the custom of ancient days, more antiquo.

According to the long-established custom, veteri more.

In ancient times, antiquitus (ad-verb).

And, et, -que, atque, ac.

Anecdote, fabula.

Anew, de integro.

Anger, ira. To cherish anger, succenseo (with dat.).

Angry with, am, irascor (dat.). Being angered (angry), iratus.

To make angry (provoke), laceo.

Annihilate, deleo.

Announce, nuntio, refero.

Announcement (use nuntio).

Annoy, laceo. To be annoyed at, aegre fero.

Another, alter, alius. (Do not use alius in gen. or dat. sing.).

Alter means one of two, one's neighbour or fellow creature.

To slander another, alteri maledicere.

Alius means other, different.

Different men have different aims, alii alia petunt.

One another, may often be translated by inter se, or alii alios.

Answer (noun), responsum.

(verb), respondeo. I made no answer, nihil respondi.

To answer (in a letter), rescribo.

Antiquity, antiquitas; (of a thing still existing) vetustas.

Anxiety, sollicitudo. Free from anxiety, securus.

Anxious, sollicitus; **anxious for** studiosus, cupidus (with gen.).

I am anxious, cupio (with inf.); am anxious for, diffido.

Any (see chap. xlv).

In negative clauses, quisquam (subst.) or ullus (adj.).

Is there any who? ecquis? (impassioned interrogative).

Any you like, quivis, quilibet (all included).

If any, si quis.

Can any one tell me? numquis mihi dicere potest?

Any one who does this (will suffer for it), si quis (or quicumque) hoc fecerit.

Any man can boast, quivis gloriari potest, or, cuiusvis est gloriari.

Scarcely any one, vix quisquam.

Any longer (with neg.), diutius, or iam (sometimes ultra).

Anywhere (in neg. clauses), usquam.

Apologize for, veniam peto (with quod); me excuso (quod).

Apparently (use videor). You are apparently mistaken, errare videris.

Appeal to, obtestor. I appeal to you not to . . . , te obtestor ne . . .

I solemnly appeal to you, fidem tuam imploro (ut or ne).

Appear, videor, appareo.

Applaud, (by clapping) plaudo (dat.); (by shouting) conclamo; (praise) collaudo.

Amid the applause of all, conclamantibus omnibus.

Apply, pomum.

Apply (a remedy, &c.), adhibeo.

Appoint, creo, nomino; (to a command) praeficio.

An appointed place, locus constitutus; on the appointed day, die constituto.

Apprehension, metus.

Approach (noun), adventus; (but more often turned by a verb).

(verb) advenio, adeo, appropinquo; (of time) appeto.

On the approach of spring, appetente (or appropinquante) vere.

Approve, probo.

Approval, consensus. He won no man's approval for his deeds, facta sua nemini probavit.

Apt (fit), aptus, idoneus.

Archer, sagittarius.

Ardently, vehementer.

Ardour for, studium (with gen.).

Argue, dissero ; (maintain) affirmo, dictito.

Aright, recte.

Aristocratic party, optimates.

Arm (of the body), brachium, lacertus.

Arms (weapons), arma ; armatura.

Armed, armatus ; under arms, in armis ; take up arms, arma sumo.

Armistice, indutiae.

Army, exercitus, agmen, copiae.

Arouse, excitare.

Arrange, instituo, constituo ; curo (with gerundive).

Arrest, comprehendo.

Arrival, adventus (but often expressed by a verb).

Arrive, venio, advenio, pervenio. On arriving there, quo cum pervenisset.

Arrogance, arrogantia, superbia.

Arrogant, arrogans, superbus.

Arrow, sagitta.

Art, ars.

Artizan, artifex.

As (see Comparative clauses). As I was walking in the garden, dum in horto ambulo (or cum ambularem).

As winter approaches, appropinquante hieme.

They salute him as General, salutant eum Imperatorem.

To regard as a friend, pro amico habere.

As I live, I am speaking the truth, ita vivam, ut vera dico.

As I suppose, ut opinor ; as they say, ut ferunt (aiunt).

As far as I know, quod sciam.

As if, quasi, tanquam.

As often as, quoties, cum.

As regards, or **as to**, de.

As though, tanquam.

Ascend the throne, rex fio, regnum accipio.

Ascertain, cognosco, comperio ; (know for certain) compertum habeo ; (am informed of), certior fio,

Ascribe, this I ascribe to you (am indebted to you for this), hoc tibi acceptum refero (metaphor from an account book).

Ask (questions), rogo, interrogo, quaero (ex).

(requests), rogo, oro, peto (ab), posco, postulo, flagito. Rogo is simply to ask ; peto is frequently used of a request made to a superior, or one in authority ; postulo and posco imply rather to demand or claim as a right ; flagito is used of importunate demands ; oro is to beg or implore (oro et obsecro, I beg and beseech).

Ask repeatedly, rogito.

Asleep, am, dormio.

Aspect (of affairs), rerum facies, aspectus, species.

Assail, assault, oppugno.

Assailant, oppugnator (or use verb).

Assassin, sicarius.

Assassinate, trucidare.

Assault (noun), impetus ; (on town) oppugnatio.

Assemble (trans.), convoco ; (intrans.), convenio.

Assembly, concilium, conventus, contio.

Assert, affirmo, confirmo, dico ; (pretend) dictito ; (maintain) vindico ; I assert my country's freedom, patriam in libertatem vindico.

Assign, attribuere.

Assist, adiuvo, subvenio (dat.), succurro (dat.), adsum (dat.) ; bring help to, opem fero (dat.).

Assume, sumo, assumo, usurpo.

Assurance, confidentia.

Assured (certain), exploratus.

Astonished, attonitus.

Asylum, asylum.

At (of places), locative case, or ad or apud with acc. (see p. 49).

At all (with neg.), omnino.

At last, tandem.

At once, statim, illico.

At the same time, simul, eodem tempore.

Athens, Athenae ; Athenian, Atheniensis.

Atone for, luo, expio ; poenas do (with gen.).

Attach to, iungo, adiungo. He is greatly attached to me, mei amantissimus est.

Attack, adgredior, adior, impetum facere in; oppugno.

Adgredior means to attack in general sense; adior is used of sudden attacks or surprises; oppugno means to assault or make an elaborate attack (on a town, &c.).

To attack in words is invehor in (with acc.);

To attack (of a pestilence or panic, &c.) is invado; (of a disease) afficio.

Attack (noun), impetus; (for gen. dat. abl. plural, use incursio).

Attain to (arrive at), pervenio ad, consequi; (obtain) adipiscor.

Attempt, conor; (battle) tempto.

Attempt (noun), inceptum, conatus.

Attend to, curo; studeo, operam dare (dat.).

Attention, pay (to a person) colo. Not to attract the attention of the enemy, ne ab hostibus videretur.

Attentive, sedulus, attentus.

Audacity, audacia.

Augur, augur.

August (month), mensis Augustus.

Auspices, augury, auspiciū, augurium; take the auspices, auspicor.

Authority, auctoritas, imperium (see Influence).

On the authority of Tullius, auctore Tullio.

The authorities, magistratus (plur.).

Autumn, auctumnus.

Avail, valeo; I avail myself of, utor.

What avails it? quid iuvat?

He has more influence with me, ille plus apud me valet.

Avarice, avaritia.

Avenge (of persons), parento (dat.); (of wrongs, &c.), ulciscor.

Avenger, ultor, vindex.

Avert, avertēre, arcere, prohibere (ab).

Avoid, (a danger) vito, (a burden) defugio. (He ran away) to avoid being seen, ne videretur.

Await, expecto, maneo.

Awake, expergiscor; to remain awake, vigilo.

Aware of, am, sentio, non ignoro.

Away, am, absum.

Awe, reverentia.

Axe, securis.

B

Back (noun), tergum. They turn their backs (run away), terga dant (or vertunt).

Back (adv.), retro; go back, redeo.

Bad, malus, pravus.

Baggage, impedimenta (plur.).

Bait, esca.

Band, manus.

Banish, expello, in exilium pello, civitate expello (exigo).

Banishment, exilium, fuga.

Bank (of river), ripa.

Bankrupt, decoctor. To be bankrupt, non solvendo esse (or rationes conturbare).

Banner, signum militare (or aquila).

Banquet, epulae.

Barbarian, barbarus.

Barbarous (cruel), crudelis.

Barber, tonsor.

Bard, vates.

Bargain (make a), paciscor.

Barley, hordeum.

Barn, horreum.

Barren, sterilis; (profitless) irritus.

Base, turpis.

Bathe, lavo (or me lavo).

Battle, proelium, pugna.

Line of battle, acies.

Give or join battle, proelium committere, proelio dimicare.

Offer battle, pugnandi copiam facere.

Draw up in battle array, (in) acie instruere.

There was a battle (a battle was fought), pugnatum est.

Bay (of the sea), sinus.

Beach, ora maritima, litus.

Beak, rostrum.

Bear (carry), fero, porto; (endure) perfero, patior, tolero; (a child) pario.

To bear oneself (well, ill, &c.), se gerere; se praestare.

Bear ill will to, invideo (dat.).

Beast, belua, bestia, animal. Wild beast, fera; beast of burden, iumentum.

- Beat**, verbero; caedo; (conquer) vinco, supero.
- Beautiful**, pulcher; (of scenery) amoenus.
- Beauty**, pulchritudo, forma.
- Because**, quod, quia, quoniam, quandoquidem.
- Become**, fio.
- Becomes** (it), decet.
- Bed**, cubile. I go to bed, cubitum eo.
- Before** (prep.), ante, prae; (adv.), ante, antea, prius; (conj.), antequam, priusquam.
- A little while before, paulo ante; long before, multo ante; before long, haud multo post.
- Beg**, oro, precor; beg and beseech, oro et obsecro.
- I beg you to return, oro ut redeas; I beg you not to return, oro te ne redeas.
- Begin**, coepi, incipio; begin battle, proelium ineo (or committo).
- Beginning**, initium. In the beginning, initio, principio.
- Behalf** (on behalf of), pro.
- Behave**, se gerere, se praeberere.
- Behind**, pone, post; from behind, a tergo; those behind, insequentes.
- Behold**, aspicio, conspicio, conspicer.
- Behoves**, it, oportet.
- Belief**, opinio.
- Believe**, credo (dat., or acc. and infin.); fidem habeo (dat.).
- Belong to**, sum (with gen.); I belong to the class of, unus sum ex; belonging to others, alienus.
- Beloved**, carus, dilectus, amatus.
- Below**, infra, subter, sub.
- Bend**, flecto.
- Beneficial**, utilis, salutaris.
- Benefit** (noun), beneficium. (verb), prosum, usui sum (dat.).
- Beseech**, oro, obsecro, precor.
- Besides** (adv.), praeterea, insuper; (prep.), praeter.
- Besiege**, obsideo; (storm) oppugno.
- Best**, optimus; all the best men, optimus quisque.
- To do one's best, pro viribus agere, id agere ut.
- The gerundive may often be used to translate 'best' and 'better',
- Best**, *cont.*
as, I thought it best to go (that I had better go), eundum esse putavi.
- Bestow**, dono, largior.
- Betake** oneself, se conferre, se recipere.
- Betray**, prodo.
- Better**, melior. To change for the better, in melius mutari.
It would have been better, satius (or melius) fuit.
- Between**, inter.
- Bewail**, comploro, deploro.
- Beware**, caveo.
- Beyond**, ultra.
- Bid**, iubeo; at the bidding of, iussu (gen.).
- Bill**, rogatio.
- Bind**, vincio, ligo; (by an oath) obstringo.
- Bird**, avis, volucris, ales.
- Birth** (race), genus.
- Bitter**, amarus, acerbus.
- Bitterly**, acriter, vehementer.
- Black**, niger, ater; (metaph. of crime) tantus, or tam atrox.
- Blame** (noun), culpa. (verb), culpo, vitupero, reprehendo.
- Blameless**, innocens, extra culpam.
- Blaze** (verb), flagro.
- Blemish**, vitium, mendum.
- Blessed**, beatus.
- Blessing**, bonum.
- Blind**, caecus, oculis captus.
- Block** (verb), obstruo.
- Blockade** (noun), obsidio. (verb), obsideo.
- Blood**, sanguis, cruor.
- Bloodshed**, caedes, strages.
- Bloody**, cruentus.
- Blow** (noun), ictus; (metaph. of misfortune) calamitas. (verb), flo.
- Blue**, caeruleus.
- Blunder**, error.
- Blush**, erubesco; blush at or for, me pudet (with infin. or gen.).
- Board**, go on board, navem conscendere.
- Boast**, me iacto, prae me fero; glorior.
- Boat**, linter, cymba.
- Body**, corpus; dead body, cadaver; (of troops) manus.
- Bodyguard**, custodes, satellites.
- Bold**, audax, fortis, ferox.

Boldly, audacter, fortiter, ferociter.
Boldness, audacia.
Bombard, per vim expugno.
Bone, os.
Book, liber.
Boon, munus, beneficium, gratia.
Booty, praeda.
Borders, fines.
Born, am, nascor. Born and bred, natus educatusque.
Borrow, mutuor; aes alienum facio; utendum peto, rogo, or accipio.
Both, (of two considered together) ambo; (considered separately) uterque; (conj.) both . . . and, et . . . et, cum . . . tum, non modo . . . sed etiam, sicut . . . ita.
Bottom, the bottom of the mountain, mons imus.
Bound, contineo; set bounds to, tempero, moderor (dat.).
Bound (in duty), use debeo, oportet, or gerundive.
Bow, arcus.
Bow to, obsequor (dat.).
Boy, puer. From boyhood, a puero (a pueris).
Brain, cerebrum. Brains (cleverness), ingenium, mens.
Brand, notam (alicui) inuro. I brand you with shame, notam tibi infamiae inuro.
Brandish, iacto.
Brave, fortis, validus. Show oneself brave, se fortem praeberere.
Bravely, fortiter.
Bravery, virtus, fortitudo.
Bread, panis.
Break, frango; (metaph., e. g. a law), violo.
Break down, diruo, rescindo.
Break through, perrumpo.
Break up (trans.), dissipio; (intrans.), dissipor.
Break out, erumpo.
Break one's word, fidem fallo.
At last the line broke, tandem inclinavit acies.
Breast, pectus.
Breast-works, plutei.
Breastplate, lorica.
Breath, aura.
Breathe, spiro.
Breeze, aura.
Bribe (noun), pecunia.
(verb), pecunia corrumpo.
Bribery, ambitus.

Brick, later.
Bridge, pons. Throw a bridge over a river, pontem in flumine facio.
Bridle (bit), frenum.
Brigand, latro.
Bright, clarus, lucidus.
Brilliant, clarus, nitidus, eximius.
Bring, fero; bring to, affero, (of persons) adduco.
Bring help, auxilium (opem) fero; bring up (supplies), subveho.
Bring back, refero; bring back word, renuntio.
Bring credit, harm, loss, pain, disgrace, &c., to; sum (alicui) honori, detrimento, damno, dolori, dedecori, &c.
I bring myself to do this, adducor ut hoc faciam.
Britain, Britannia; **Britons**, Britanni.
Broad, latus.
Brother, frater.
Buffoon, scurra.
Bugbears, terrores, terricula.
Bugler, tubicen.
Build, aedifico, exstruo; build a (long) wall, murum duco.
Bull, **Bullock**, taurus, bos, iuvenus.
Burden, onus. He is a burden to me, est mihi oneri.
Burdensome, molestus.
Burn (trans.), incendo, uro; (intrans.), ardeo. Burning with rage, incensus ira.
Burst, rumpo; burst into, irrumpo; burst open, efringo.
Bury, sepelio.
Business, res, negotium. Go about one's business, suas res agere.
Bustle, trepido, concurso.
Busy oneself with, versari in.
But, sed, at, verum; autem (enclitic); (nevertheless) tamen, nihilominus.
Distinguish between **sed** and **autem**; **sed** qualifies, corrects, or denies; **autem** (whereas, while) introduces a statement not inconsistent with the first: Ille quidem stultus; tu autem callidus, sed nullo modo constans. He is a fool; whereas you are clever, but by no means reliable.
Distinguish also between **verum** (but) and **vero** (truly).

But, cont.

But meaning **except** is *praeter* or *nisi*.

No one but the consul, *nemo praeter consulem*.

No one but a fool, *nemo nisi stultus*.

But meaning **only** is *modo*; had I but known, *si modo scirem*.

All but (meaning very nearly) is *tantum non*, or can be rendered by *Minimum abest* *quin*; they all but took the city, *urbem tantum non ceperunt*, or *Minimum abfuit quin urbem ceperint*.

But you tell me, or **but you will say** (anticipating a possible objection) is **at** or **at enim**.

But, you will say, he acted under compulsion, *at enim coactus fecit*.

Butcher (verb), *trucido*.

Buy, *emo*; buy back, *redimo*.

By (with living agent), *a*, *ab*; by means of, *per* (or use *abl.* without prep.; see p. 13); to abide by one's promise, *promissis sto*, or *fidem servo*.

I pray you by the gods, *per te deos oro* (notice the order).

By the appointed day, *ad diem dictum*.

Bystanders, *adstantes*, *circumstantes*.

C

Calamity, *incommodum*, *calamitas*; (in war), *clades*.

Calculate (think), *reor*.

Calends, *kalendae*.

Call (name), *appello*, *nomino*, *voco*; (summon), *arcesso*, *voco*.

Call away, *avoco*; call to (ac-cost), *appello*; call together, *convoco*.

Call on (go to see) a friend, (*amicum*) *convenio*, *viso*.

Be called, *vocor*, *nominator*.

Called Brutus, *nomine Brutus*, or *cui nomen est Brutus*.

Calm, *tranquillus*, *aequus*, *placidus*.

With a calm mind, *aequo animo*.

Calumny, *calumnia*.

Camp, *castra*. Pitch a camp, *castra pono* or *facio*; strike a camp, *castra moveo*.

Campaign, *bellum*; (year) *annus*. The campaign was prosperous (disastrous), *res prospere* (*infeliciter*) *gesta est*.

Can, *possum*, *valeo*; **cannot**, *nequeo*, *non possum*.

Candidate, *petitor*. To be a candidate for office, *magistratum peto*.

Candle, *candela*.

Capable of, *aptus ad*, *capax* (with *gen.*).

Capital (city), *caput*.

Capitol, *capitolium*.

Caprice, *libido*.

Captain, *praefectus* (of ship), *gubernator*, *rector*.

Captive, *captivus*.

Capture (verb), *capio*.

(noun), use *capio*; after the capture of the city, *post urbem captam*.

Care (noun), **carefulness**, *cura*, *diligentia*; free from care, *securus*.

(verb), *curo*; take care that you keep well, *cura ut valeas*.

To take care (beware), *caveo*.

He took care that the bridge should be destroyed, *pontem delendum curavit*.

Care for (like, love), *amo*, *diligo*; but, I don't care a straw for philosophy, *philosophiam non flocci facio*.

Career, *cursus*, *vita*.

Careful, I am careful for your welfare, *tibi caveo*.

Carefully, *diligenter*.

Carelessness, *neglegentia*.

Carry, *porto*, *fero*, *veho*.

Carry across, *transporto*; trade, *transveho*.

Carry off, *abigo*, *averto*.

Carry on (war), *gero*; carry on negotiations with, *res ago cum*.

Carry out (of the country), *exporto*; (a scheme) *conficio*, *exsequor*.

Carthage, *Carthago*.

Carthaginian, *Poenus*; (adj.) *Punicus*, *Carthaginiensis*.

Case (at law), *causa*.

It is the case that, *fit ut* (subj.).

In our case, *in nobis*.

Cast, *iacio*, *conicio*.

Cast up an account, *rationem puto*, *conficio*.

Cast a thing in any one's teeth, *obicio aliquid alicui*.

Cat, feles.

Catch, capio, assequor.

Catch up, consequor.

Catch sight of, conspicio, conspikor.

Cattle, pecus, pecudes, boves.

Cause (noun), causa; to plead a cause, causam defendo.

(verb), facio, efficio; cause panic, terrorem inicio.

To be the cause of, causae esse.

I am the cause of, per me fit ut, per me stat quominus.

He caused a bridge to be built, pontem faciendum curavit.

Caution, diligentia, cura.

With caution, caute.

Want of caution, temeritas.

Cavalry, equites; (collective) equitatus.

Cave, cavern, antrum, spelunca, caverna.

Cease, desino, desisto.

Celebrate, celebros.

Celebrate a feast, festum diem habeo.

Celebrated, praeclarus.

The celebrated Brutus, Brutus ille.

Centre, pars media; the centre of a line, acies media.

Centurion, centurio.

Certain, certus, exploratus; a certain person or thing, quidam.

This I know for certain, hoc certo scio, or hoc pro certo habeo.

It is not certain, incertum est.

Certainly, certo; (at least) certe; (I grant that), sane.

This I certainly know (this at least I know), illud certe scio.

Chain, catena; chains (bonds), vincula.

Chair, sella, cathedra.

Chance (personified), Fortuna; (opportunity), facultas, occasio.

By chance, forte, casu; by mere chance, forte ac casu.

Change (noun), commutatio, res novae; change of purpose, inconstantia; change of sides, transitio.

(verb), muto; commuto; (intrans.), mutor.

Channel, fretum.

Character (moral), mores, indoles; (intellectual), ingenium.

Good character, virtus.

Character, *cont.*

Character in a play, persona.

Characters (letters), litterae.

Of the same character as, qualis . . . talis.

Characteristic, it is characteristic of a wise man, sapientis est, &c.

Charge (noun), (accusation), crimen; (attack), impetus.

(verb), invado, irruo, impetum facio in.

Charged (accused), accusatus.

Chariot, currus.

Charioteer, auriga.

Charm (noun), carmen, dulcedo.

Chastise, castigo, punio, caedo.

Chastisement, supplicium. Inflict chastisement on, animadverto in (acc.).

Cheap, vilis, parvi pretii. Hold cheap, parvi facio or aestimo.

Cheaply (buy or sell), vili pretio, parvo.

Cheat, fallo, fraudo, verba do (dat.).

Check, impedio, cohibeo, obsto (dat.); (troops) contineo; (temper, feelings, &c.), moderor, tempero. N.B. moderor and tempero, when meaning to 'direct' or 'govern', take acc.; when meaning to 'set limits to', they take the dat.

Cheek, gena.

Cheer (noun), clamor. To be of good cheer, bono animo esse.

Cheer on, hortor, adhortor.

Cheerful, hilaris.

Cheese, caseus.

Cherish, tueor.

Chicken, pullus.

Chief, chieftain, rex, regulus; (chief man), princeps.

Child, infans, puer, puella; filius, filia; **children**, liberi.

Choice, of one's own choice, sua sponte, ultro.

Choose (pick out), eligo, deligo; (like, wish), volo, libet.

We choose you as capatin, te ducem eligimus.

We choose this for our home, hunc locum domicilio eligimus.

I choose to do this, hoc facere mihi libet.

Circle, orbis.

Circuit, circuitus.

Circumstance, res.

Under these circumstances, quae cum ita sint (essent).

Under the circumstances, ut in tali re.

Yield to circumstances, temporibus cedo.

Citadel, arx.**Citizen, civis.**

City, urbs, oppidum. Of the city (adj.), urbanus.

Civil (polite), comis, urbanus. Civil war, bellum civile.

Claim, usurpo, mihi vindico.

Clamour for, flagito.

Clan, gens.

Class, genus, classis. Of his own class, sui generis.

Clean, mundus.

Clear (verb), purgo ; I clear myself of, me purgo de.

(adj.), clarus, manifestus, certus.

It is clear, apparet, manifestum est ; patet.

Clearly (evidently), sine dubio ; manifesto, certo.

In a clear sky, in caelo sereno.

Cleave, scindo, discindo.

Clemency, clementia.

Clever, callidus, sollers, sapiens.

Client, cliens ; my client, hic.

Cliff, rupes, saxa praerupta.

Climb, scando, ascendo.

Cling, haereo.

Cloak, pallium ; (military), sagum.

Close (verb), claudo, operio.

(adv.), prope, haud procul.

In close order, conferti, conferto agmine.

At close quarters, comminus.

Be close to, prope abesse ab.

A close friend, amicissimus.

Closely resembling, simillimus.

Clothe, vestio, induo.

Clothes, vestis (use sing.), vestitus.

Cloud, nubes ; cloud of arrows, &c., multitudo.

Club, clava, fustis.

Coast, litus, ora.

Coast along, (nave) praetervehor.

Coat, tunica, vestis.

Coax, blandior (dat.), mulceo.

Cobbler, sutor.

Cohort, cohors (consisted of 600 men).

Coin, nummus.

Cold (subst.), frigus.

(adj.), frigidus, gelidus.

Colleague, collega.

Collect, colligo, cogo. Collect oneself, or one's wits, me colligo.

Collision with (come into), confligo cum.

Colonist, colonus.

Colony, colonia.

Colour, color.

Column (on the march), agmen.

Combatants, pugnantes, ei qui pugnant.

Combination, in, una, universi, coniuncti.

Come, venio. Come back, redeo, regredior. Come between, intercedo. Come down, descendo. Come forth, prodeo. Come in, ineo, intro. Come out, egredior. Come to, advenio. Come up, subeo, subvenio. Come together, convenio. Come upon, incido in. Come to the help of, subvenio (dat.), succurro (dat.). Come off victorious, evado victor. Come to oneself, in me redeo, animum recipio.

Coming (arrival), adventus ; (often expressed by verb).

Command, impero (dat. and ut) ; iubeo (acc. and inf.).

Be in command of, praesum.

Put in command of, praeficio.

At the command of, iussu.

Chief command, summa imperii.

Commander (general sense), dux.

Commander in chief, imperator.

Officer in command, legatus.

Commander of a garrison, &c., praefectus.

Commanding position, locus opportunus.

Commence, &c., see begin.

Commend, commendo.

Commit (entrust), mando (aliquid alicui) ; permitto.

Commit a crime, committo, admitto, facio (scelus, &c.).

Commit a fault, pecco.

Common (shared with many), communis, publicus ; (ordinary), vulgaris, quotidianus.

The common people, plebs, vulgus.

Commonwealth, respublica, civitas.

A common saying, tritum proverbium.

Commonly, vulgo, plerumque; (or use constat).
Communicate, communico cum.
Community, civitas, cives.
Companion, comrade, comes, socius; his companions, sui.
Company, societas; (of soldiers) manipulus. In company with, cum; comitatus (abl.).
Compare, comparo, confero cum.
Compassion, misericordia.
Compel, cogo.
Complain, queror, conqueror.
Complaint, querela.
Complete (verb), compleo, expleo; perficio.
Compliment (verb), collaudo.
Comply with, obsequor (dat.).
Compose, compono; be composed of, constare ex.
Compulsion, under (vi) coactus.
Comrade, see companion.
Conceal, celo, abdo; dissimulo.
Concerning (prep.), de (abl.), super (acc.).
Concerns, it, attinet ad, pertinet ad; refert, interest.
Conciliate, concilio.
Concur with, assentior (dat.), consentio.
Condemn, damno, condemno; condemn to death, capitis damno.
Condition (lot), fortuna; (term), condicio; on condition that, ea lege ut.
Conduct (noun), mores; safe conduct, fides data.
 (verb), administro, duco.
Confer (bestow), confero; have a conference with, colloquor.
Conference, colloquium.
Confess, fateor, confiteor.
Confidence (trust), fides, fiducia.
 Put confidence in, confido (dat.), fidem habeo (dat.).
Confirm, confirmo.
Confiscate, publico.
Conflict, certamen, proelium.
Conformity, in — with, secundum (acc.), ex (abl.).
Confusion, trepidatio; tumultus.
 Confusion reigns, trepidatur.
 Throw into confusion, perturbo.
Congratulate, gratulor (dat.). I congratulate you on this . . . hoc (or, ob hanc rem) tibi gratulor.

Conneet, iungo, coniungo. Connected with (by birth), cognatus, coniunctus natu.
Conquer, vinco, supero; debello.
Conqueror, victor.
Consecrate, voveo: sacro, consecro, dedico.
Consent (verb), consentio, volo; patior.
 (noun), consensus.
 With one consent, consensu omnium, uno consensu.
Consider, cogito, delibero, existimo, reputo, habeo.
 Considering, ratus; 'considering that' may often be translated by Cum.
 Considering the circumstances, ut in tali re, ut in his rebus, or quae cum ita sint (essent).
Considerable, aliquantus. Considerable booty, aliquantum praedae.
Consist of, consto ex.
Consolation, solatium. This is a great consolation to me, hoc est mihi magno solatio.
Console, solor, consolor.
Conspicuous, insignis.
Conspiracy, coniuratio.
Conspirators, coniurati (or turn by Qui with verb).
Conspire, coniuro.
Constancy, constantia.
Constantly, semper, numquam non.
Constitution, respublica, or reipublicae forma.
Constitutional, e republica; unconstitutional, contra rempublicam.
Construct, aedifico (sometimes facio).
Consul, consul.
Consular, consularis.
Consulship, consulatus. To stand for the consulship, consulatum peto.
Consult, delibero; consilium capio.
 Consult a person (ask his opinion), consulo with acc.
 Consult a person's interest, consulo with dat.
Consume, consumo.
Contemporary, aequalis.
Contempt, contemptio. Come into contempt, in contemptionem venio.
Contend, certo, contendo.
Content, contentus (abl.).

Contest (noun), certamen. There was a fierce contest, atrociter pugnatum est.

Continent (noun), continens (sc. terra).

Continual (long continued), diutinus; (frequent) creber.

Continue, produco. To continue marching, iter continuo.

Continuous, perpetuus, continuus.

Contractor, conductor, redemptor.

Contrary (adj.), contrarius.

Contrary to, contra.

Contrary to the opinion of all, contra omnium opinionem.

Contrary to his hopes, contra quam speraverat.

Contribute, confero; contribute to, conduco ad.

Control (verb), moderor (acc. or dat.), coerceo.

(noun), auctoritas, potestas, imperium.

Control of a campaign, summa imperii, summa belli administrandi.

Convenience, commodum (or com-moda, plur.).

Convenient, commodus.

Conversation, sermo.

Converse, colloquor.

Convict (verb), condemnno, convinco.

Convince, see persuade. I am convinced of this, hoc cognitum, exploratum, or mihi persuasum, habeo.

Convoke, convoco.

Cook (noun), coquus.
(verb), coquo.

Cool, gelidus.

Corn, frumentum.

Corpse, cadaver.

Correctly, recte.

Corslet, lorica.

Cost (verb), sto, consto (with abl.).
It costs little, parvo constat; it cost much blood, multo stetit sanguine.

Cottage, casa.

Couch, lectus, torus.

Council, concilium.

Counsel, consilium; (at law), patronus.

Count (number), numero, enumero; (hold, consider), habeo, duco.

I count Crassus as my friend, Crassum in amicorum numero habeo.

Countenance (noun), vultus, facies.

Country (native land), patria; (land, territory), fines, agri; (district), terra, regio; country as opp. to town, rus.

The country (meaning the people), cives, respublica.

To die for one's country, pro patria mori.

In the country (loc.), ruri or rure.

Countryman, civis; (as opp. to townsman) rusticus.

Courage, virtus, animus, constantia, fortitudo.

To show courage, virtutem praesto.

To have the courage, audeo.

Courageous, fortis.

Course, cursus; to hold on one's course, cursum teneo.

(Plan), consilium; to adopt a course, consilium capio, rationem ineo.

In course of time, post aliquantum temporis.

Of course, nempe, scilicet.

Court (of law), iudicium; (of a house, &c.) aula.

Courteous, urbanus, humanus.

Courtesy, urbanitas, comitas, urbani mores.

Courtier, aulicus, amicus principis.

Cover, operio; (shelter) tego.

Covetous, avidus, cupidus (gen.).

Covetousness, avaritia, aviditas, cupiditas.

Cow, vacca.

Coward, cowardly, ignavus, timidus.

Cowardice, ignavia, timiditas.

Crack (noun), rima.

(verb), findo.

Craft, dolus.

Crafty, callidus, subdolus, vafer, versutus.

Crash, fragor.

Crave for, appeto; desidero (mostly for something lost).

Craving for (noun), desiderium.

(adj.), appetens (gen.).

Crawl, (of animals) serpo; (of persons) repo.

Create, creo, gigno.

Creature, animal.

Credible, credibilis. It is scarcely credible, vix credi potest.

Credit, laus. This is a credit to you, hoc tibi laudi est.

Crime (guilt, or offence against one's fellows), *scelus*; (an omission or contravention of duty), *delictum*; (a wicked deed), *facinus* (sometimes used of a great exploit); a sin deserving punishment), *peccatum*; (a shameful act done in a passion), *flagitium*; (a fault or imperfection), *vitium*; (wickedness or worthlessness), *nequitia*.

He counted it a crime on my part, *hoc mihi vitio dedit*.

Criminal, *nocens*, *sceleratus*.

Crisis, *discrimen*; critical moment, *occasio*, or simply *tempus*.

He said that affairs had reached a crisis, *dixit in summo esse rem discrimine*.

Crop, *seges*.

Cross (verb), *transeo*, *traicio*; take across, *traduco*, *transporto*.
(noun), *crux*.

Crowd (noun), *turba*, *multitudo*.

In crowds, *frequentes*.

(verb), *congregor*, or pass. of *circumfundo*.

The enemy crowd around, *circumfunduntur hostes*.

Crown (literal), *corona*; (sovereignty) *regnum*.

Cruelty, in *crucem tollo*.

Cruel, *crudelis*, *saevus*.

Cruelty, *crudelitas*; show cruelty, *saevio*.

Cruise (noun), *cursus*, *navigatio*.

Cruiser, *navis longa*.

Crush, *opprimo*, *profligo*.

Crushing (blow, calamity, &c.), use *Tantus* or *Tam gravis*.

Cry (noun), *clamor*.

(verb), (shout), *clamo*, *conclamo*, *exclamo*; (weep), *fleo*, *lacrimo*.

A cry was raised, *conclamatum est*, *sublatus est clamor*.

Cultivate, *colo*.

Cultured, *eruditus*.

Cunning (noun), *dolus*, *sollertia*.

(adj.), *sollers*, *vafer*.

Cup, *poculum*, *calix*.

Cupboard, *arca*, *capsa*.

Cure, *medeor* (dat.), *saño*.

Curse, *exsecror*.

Custom, *mos*, *consuetudo*. According to my custom, *more meo*.

Customary, *solitus*, *usitatus*, *sollemnis*.

Cut, *seco*, *caedo*, *scindo*; cut down, *recido*, *succido*; (kill), *occido*; cut off, *absumo*; cut off from (flight, &c.), *intercludo*; cut through, cut in two, *discindo*; cut a way through the enemy, *per hostes erumpo*. To be cut off (destroyed), *pereo*, *intereo*.

D

Dagger, *pugio*.

Daily (adj.) (by day), *diurnus* (as opp. to *Nocturnus*, by night); (every day), *quotidianus*.

(adv.), *quotidie*; (with comparatives, or with notion of increase or decrease), in *dies*, or (more emphatic) in *singulos dies*.

Damp, *humidus*. To be damp, *madeo*.

Danger, *periculum*, *discrimen*.

Dangerous, *periculosus*.

Dare, *audeo*.

Daring (noun), *audacia*.

(adj.), *audax*.

Dark, *obscurus*; (metaph. of crime, &c.), *atrox*. He kept his father in the dark about this, *hoc patrem celabat*.

Darken, *obscuro*.

Darkness, *tenebrae*, *caligo*.

Darling, *deliciae*.

Dart, *telum*, *iaculum*, *spiculum*.

Dash, *affligo*; dash against, *illido*; dash over, *infundor* (dat.), *obruo*.

Date, *tempus*; (or may often be translated by *Quando* and subordinate clause).

Daughter, *filia*; daughter-in-law, *nurus*.

Day, *dies*. N.B. *Dies* is masc. except when it means an appointed day, or a period of time, when it is fem.

A period of two days, *biduum*; of three days, *triduum*.

The day before, *pridie* (may govern an acc.); of the day before (adj.), *hesternus*; from day to day, or day after day, *diem ex die*, *de die in diem*.

Daybreak, *prima lux*.

In our day, *temporibus nostris*.

On the following day, *postridie postero die*.

Dead, mortuus; half dead, semianimis or semianimus; dead body, cadaver.

Deadly (hostile), infensus; deadly wound, mortiferum vulnus.

Deaf, surdus, auribus captus.

Deal with, ago cum.

Dear, carus, dulcis, gratus; (costly), pretiosus (or use gen. or abl. of value or price).

The victory cost us dear, multo sanguine victoria nobis stetit.

Death, mors; even to death, usque ad mortem; condemn to death, capitis damno.

To put to death, interficio, occido, morte adficio.

To face or meet death, mortem obo.

After his death, mortuus (illo mortuo).

Debt, aes alienum.

Decay (verb), tabesco.

Deceitful, fallax.

Deceive, decipio, fallo, eludo.

Decide, decerno, iudico; decide a contest, rem decerno; (resolve), statuo, constituo.

It is decided (resolved), placet, visum est.

Decision, arbitrium, iudicium, sententia.

It depends on your decision, tui est arbitrii.

Declare, pronuntio, affirmo. Declare war, bellum indico.

Decline, recuso, detrecto; (be unwilling), nolo.

Decree (noun), edictum, decretum; (of the Senate) Senatus consultum.

(verb), decerno, edico, statuo.

Dedicate, dedico, dico, consecro.

Deed, factum, facinus, (sometimes res).

Deem, puto, duco, habeo, aestimo.

Deep, altus, profundus; (metaph. of grief, &c.), gravis.

Deer, cervus.

Defeat (noun), clades.

(verb), vinco, supero, devinco, debello.

Defect, vitium.

Defences, munitiones.

Defend, defendo, tueor. What is your defence? quid defendis?

Defendant, reus; often Iste (as opp. to Hic, my client).

Defenders, propugnatores, defensores.

Defiance of, in, contra, contra quam.
In defiance of his promise, contra quam pollicitus erat.

Defile, saltus, fauces (plur.), angustiae (plur.).

Definite, certus, fixus.

Degradation, ignominia.

Degrading, (undeserved), indignus; (abject), humilis.

Delay (noun), mora, cunctatio.

Without delay, confestim, sine mora.

(verb), moror, demoror, cunctor.

Deliberate, delibero, consulo, consilium capio.

Deliberation, deliberatio, consultatio. With deliberation, consulto.

There is need of deliberation, consulto opus est.

Delight (noun), see joy.

(verb), gaudeo, delecto, oblecto; it delights (impers.), iuvat, delectat.

I am delighted that you are well, gaudeo quod vales.

Delightful (causing delight), iucundus; (deserving gratitude), gratus.

Deliver (set free), libero; (a letter), reddo; (hand over), trado.

Delude, fallo, eludo.

Demagogue, homo factiosus.

Demand, (claim as a right), postulo; (peremptorily or unjustly), posco; (vehemently or importunately), flagito.

He demanded hostages of the Gauls, Gallis obsides imperavit.

Demeanour, habitus.

Demolish, diruo, evertō.

Denounce (upbraid), increpo.

Dense, densus.

Deny, nego. I am denied this, hoc careo.

Depart, abeo, exeo, discedo.

Departure, profectio, discessus, (but generally turned by a verb).

Depend on, pendeo ex, consto in, ponor in.

Our victory depends on our valour, in virtute posita est victoria.

This depends on you, penes te hoc est.

Dependent, obediens, subjectus.
Deplore, deploro.
Depose, abrogo magistratum (imperium, &c.), alicui.
Deposit, repono.
Deprecate, deprecor.
Deprive of, privo (acc. and abl.), spolio (acc. and abl.), adimo (acc. and dat.).
Depth, altitudo.
 The depths of poverty, infima paupertas.
 To such a depth of disgrace, eo infamiae.
Deputation, legatio.
Descend, descendo. Descended from, prognatus, ortus, natus.
Descendants, posterī, nepotes.
Describe, demonstro, narro.
Desert (trans.), desero, destituo; (intrans.), transfugio.
 (Revolt from), deficio ab.
Desert (noun), loca deserta (plur.).
Deserter, desertor; (to the enemy), transfuga, perfuga.
Deserts, in accordance with his, merito, pro meritis.
Deserve, mereor, mereo; to deserve well of, bene mereri de.
Deservedly, merito.
Deserving of, dignus.
Design, consilium, propositum, inceptum.
Designedly, (by design), consulto.
Desirable, expetendus, optabilis, optandus.
Desire (noun), studium, cupido; id quod opto.
 With little desire for, parum appetens (gen.).
 (verb), cupio, opto, studeo (inf.); volo.
Desirous, cupidus.
Desist, desisto, absisto (ab).
Desolate, desertus.
Despair (noun), desperatio.
 In despair, re desperata (abl. abs.).
 (verb), despero (acc. or de); spem abicio.
Despatch (verb), see Send.
 (noun) litterae; nuntius.
Desperate, perditus.
Desperately, atrociter.
Despicable, contemnendus, contemptus.

Despise, contemno, sperno, despicio; am indifferent to, neglego.
Put from me with contempt, repudio; reject with disdain or strong dislike, aspernor, respuo, reicio; take no account of, nihili (or minimi) facio.
Despoil, spolio.
Despot, tyrannus, dominus.
Despotism, dominatio, imperium, potestas, dominium.
Destination, turn by a verb.
Destined, fatalis.
Destiny, fatum.
Destitute of, expers (gen.), inops, egens.
Destitution, egestas.
Destroy, deleo, perdo, excindo.
Destruction, exitium, perniciēs; (massacre), internecio.
 This will be your destruction, hoc tibi exitio erit.
 This tends to the destruction of the state, hoc evertendae est reipublicae.
Detain, retineo.
Deter, deterreo.
Determination, constantia, perseverantia; animus consilii tenax.
Determine, statuo, constituo, decerno.
Detrimental, detrimento (or damno) (pred. dat.).
Devastate, vasto.
Devoid of, vacuus, nudatus.
Devote oneself to, me do (dat.); operam do (dat. or ut); (stronger) incumbo (dat.); to devote oneself to the national cause, in rempublicam incumbo.
Devoted to, studiosus (gen.); to be devoted to, studeo (dat.).
Devotion, studium.
Devour, voro, devoro.
Dew, ros.
Dictate terms, leges impono.
Dictator, dictator.
Dictatorship, dictatura.
Die, morior, obo, (e) vita excedo.
 He died, e vita excessit; he is dead, mortuus est.
 To die (be killed) in battle, cado, concido.
 To be cut off, interemptus esse.
 To die out (metaph.), excido.
Differ, disto. They differ from one another, inter se differunt.

Difference, there is a, interest.

There is this difference between you and me, inter me ac te hoc interest.

There is a difference between talking and acting, aliud est dicere, aliud facere.

It makes a difference, interest, refert.

It makes no difference, nihil interest, (to me) mea.

Different, alius, diversus ; different from, aliusac ; at a different time, alias ; at a different place, alibi. At different times, alius alio tempore.

From different places, alius aliunde.

Differently (to), aliter ac, secus ac.

Difficult, difficilis, arduus.

Difficulties, res angustae, res adversae. Be in difficulties, laboro.

Difficulty, difficultas. With difficulty, vix, aegre ; difficulter.

Dig, fodio ; dig up, effodio.

Dignity, dignitas, honor, maiestas.

Diligence, diligentia, industria.

Diligent, diligens.

Diligently, diligenter.

Din, strepitus.

Dine, cenare ; (having dined), cenatus (an active past part.).

Dinner, cena, prandium.

Diminish, diminuo.

Dip, mergo.

Directions, in all, passim, in omnes partes.

In both directions, utrimque, ab utraque parte.

From all directions, undique, ex omnibus partibus.

They fled in different directions, diversi fugerunt.

Dirt, squalor, sordes.

Disabled, confectus.

Disaffected, seditiosus. To be disaffected, male sentio.

Disagree with, dissentio (ab or cum).

Disagreement, dissensio.

Disappoint, fallo, frustrare, de spe deicio. Disappointed, spe deiectus ; (foiled of their object), re infecta.

Disapproval, express by clamour, acclamo. (Acclamo in Cicero always implies disapproval ; in later writers approval also.)

Disaster, casus, calamitas ; (of war), clades.

Disastrous, infelix, funestus.

Disband, dimitto.

Discharge, mitto, dimitto ; missum facio. Discharge a duty, fungor (abl.).

Discipline, disciplina.

Disclose, patefacio.

Discontinue, intermitto. (Intermitto means to leave undone for a time ; omitto, to give up or pass over a thing intentionally ; praetermitto, to omit or pass by unintentionally.)

Discover, (find), comperio, reperio ; (get to know) ; cognosco.

Discuss, disputo, verbis contendo, dissero.

Disease, morbus.

Disembark (trans.), expono ; (intrans.), e nave egredior, exeo.

Disfavour, invidia.

Disgrace, infamia, dedecus, ignominia. It is a disgrace to you, est tibi dedecori.

Disgraceful, turpis.

Disgust, taedium, odium, detestatio.

Disheartened, metu commotus. Do not be disheartened, noli animum dimittere.

Dishonour (noun), ignominia, dedecus.

(verb), dedecoro, dedecori sum.

Dishonourable, inhonestus (or use dedecori or opprobrio, predicative dat.).

Dislike (noun), fastidium.

(verb), haud multum amo, or Odio est mihi.

Disloyal, infidus.

Dismay (noun), pavor.

(verb), terreo, perterreo. Dismayed, metu percussus.

Dismiss, dimitto.

Disobey (an order), neglego.

Disorder, tumultus.

Disorderly, tumultuosus, turbulentus.

Dispense with, careo, carere volo.

Disperse (trans.), dispergo, fundo, dissipare.

(intrans.), passives of above, or deponent Dilabor.

Display, ostendo ; (a quality), praesto ; display a signal, signum propono.

Displease, displiceo.
Disposed to, promptus ad.
Disposition, mens, indoles, ingenium.
Dispute (noun), altercatio disceptatio, certamen.
 (verb), decerto de, (in conversation) dissero de.
Disregard, neglegentia.
Dissatisfied, he is dissatisfied with himself, sui paenitet.
Dissemble (hide), dissimulo. (N.B. Quod non est simulo, dissimulo-que quod est.)
Dissension, discordia, dissensio.
Distance, intervallum.
 At a distance, procul.
 From a distance, e longinquo, eminus.
 To be at a distance, (procul) absum; disto.
Distant, longinquus, distans. To be distant, absum, disto.
 It is a two days' journey distant, bidui iter abest.
Distasteful, ingratus.
Distinction, (mark of difference) discrimen; (honourable) honor.
Distinguish, distinguo, noto, separo.
Distinguished, clarus, praeclarus, insignis, eximius, praestans.
Distraught, obstupefactus, demens, mente captus.
Distress (verb), adflicto, ango.
 (noun), dolor, angor animi. Be in distress, laboro.
Distribute, distribuo, partior.
District, regio, ager.
Distrust, diffido.
Disturb, turbo, perturbo.
Disturbance, tumultus, motus; cause a disturbance, tumultum excito.
Ditch, fossa.
Divert, diverto, avertio.
Divide, divido; (keep apart), distineo.
Divine, divinus.
Divisions, in two, bipertito.
Do, facio, ago.
 Do one's best to (achieve something), hoc (or id) ago ut.
 Do without, careo (abl.).
Doctor, medicus.
Dog, canis.
Dominion, (sway) imperium, dicio, potestas; (royal power) regnum; (absolute power, or tyranny) dominatus.
 Dominions, fines.

Doom, fatum. Be doomed to, destinor (dat. or ad).
Door, (doorway) ianua; (the door itself) foris, or plur. fores; to shut one's bedroom door, forem cubiculi claudo.
Doubt (noun), dubium.
 (verb), dubito. (For construction see chap. XXXI.)
Doubtful, dubius; (of a battle) anceps.
Down from, de.
Downfall, perniciēs.
Downtrodden, adflicto.
Downwards, deorsum.
Drag, traho; drag off, abstraho.
Drain, sicco, haurio, exhaurio.
Draw, (drag) traho; (water) exhaurio; (a sword) stringo; draw up a law, scribo; draw up an army, instruo; draw a boat on shore, subduco; draw off, abduco, detraho; draw near, appropinquo; (of time) appeto.
Dread (noun), formido, timor, metus.
 (verb), reformido, timeo, metuo.
Dreadful, atrox, horrendus, terribilis.
Dream (noun), somnium.
 (verb), somnio, somnio video.
Dress, vestis, vestitus, ornatus.
Drink, bibo, poto.
Drive, ago, pello; drive from (away, out) abigo, expello; drive down, depello; drive back (an enemy), reicio, repello; drive on shore, eicio.
Drown, mergo, submergo.
Duck, anas.
Due, debitus. It was due to Tullius that . . . not, Per Tullium stetit quominus . . .
Dull (adj.), hebes.
 (verb), hebeto; afficio.
Duly, rite, iuste.
Duration, turn by simple words, e.g. 'the duration of the war', say 'so long as the war shall last'.
During, per, inter.
Duty, officium, munus; (as opp. to expediency) honestas, or honesta (plur.); but the word is often to be turned by using debeo or oportet, or the gerundive, &c.

Duty, cont.

It is my duty, debeo, me oportet, meum est.

It is the praetor's duty, praetoris est.

Dwell, habito, incolo.

Dwelling, domicilium, domus.

E

Each, quisque; each of two, uterque; each and every (emphatic) unusquisque; each other, alius alium; (of two) alter alterum; inter se.

Eager, alacer; eager for, avidus, cupidus (gen.). To be eager to, gestio.

Eagerly, acriter, alacriter, cupide.

Eagerness, studium, cupiditas.

Eagle, aquila.

Ear, auris; ear of corn, arista.

With my own ears I heard it, ipse hoc audiui.

Early (adv.), (in good time) mature; (in the morning) mane.

(adj.), maturus, matutinus, tempestivus.

Early morning, prima lux; in early youth, admodum iuvenis.

Earn, mereo (or mereor).

Earnestly, vehementer, magnopere; Beg earnestly, oro et obsecro.

Earth, tellus, terra.

Earthquake, terrae motus.

Ease, otium.

Easily, facile, nullo negotio.

East, oriens, solis ortus.

Easy, facilis.

Eat, edo, comedo, vescor.

Educate, educo, erudio.

Effect (verb), efficio.

(noun), to this effect, in hunc modum.

To have but little effect on, parum valeo apud . . .

Effectual, utilis.

Egg, ovum.

Eight, octo; eighth, octavus.

Eighteen, octodecim, duodeviginti; eighteenth, duodevicensimus.

Eighty, octoginta; eightieth, octogesimus.

Effort, conatus, labor.

Either . . . or (conj.), aut . . . aut, vel . . . vel.

(pron.), (one or other of two), alteruter,

Elapse, elabor; (of time) praetereo.

Elated, elatus.

Elder, major natu; elders, patres.

Elect, eligo, deligo; to elect to an office, creo. To be elected consul, consul fio.

Elephant, elephas, elephantus.

Eloquence, eloquentia.

Else (or), aut; (adv.) alioquin.

Embark (trans.), impono; (intrans.), (in) navem conscendo.

Embezzle, averto, peculor.

Embezzlement, peculatus.

Embrace (verb), amplector, com-plector.

(noun), amplexus.

Emerge, emergo, evado.

Emergency, tempus. In an emergency, si quando opus est.

In the present emergency, in tali tempore, in re tam difficili.

Emperor, imperator.

Empire, imperium, dicio.

Empty, inanis, vacuus; (figurative of people) vanus.

Enact (carry a law, said of the magistrate), legem perfero.

Encamp, castra pono (loco); con- sideo; (stretch a tent), tendo.

Encounter (a person), obviam eo (dat.), me oppono (dat.); (an evil), experior, patior; (death), oppeto, obo.

Encourage, adhortor, cohortor, con- firmo, admoneo.

End (noun), finis; put an end to, finem impono (dat.).

(verb), finio, conficio.

Endanger, periclitor.

Endeavour, see try.

Endless, infinitus.

Endowed (with), praeditus (abl.).

Endurance, patientia, tolerantia.

Endure, patior, perpetior, perfero, tolero.

Enemy (public), hostis (generally in plur.); (personal enemy), inimicus.

Energetic, strenuus.

Energy, studium. With energy, acriter, studiose.

Without much energy, paulo remissius.

Engage in, in eo (in); be engaged in, intersum (dat.); versor in (abl.).

Engage (an enemy), or engage in battle with, congredior cum, proelium committo cum, manus consero.

Engaged, to get engaged to be married (of the man), mihi aliquam despondeo.

Engagement (battle), pugna, certamen. Naval engagement, pugna navalis.

Enjoy, fruor (abl.), utor (abl.).

Enjoy the friendship of, amicor utor. Enjoy oneself, delector, beatus sum.

Enlist (trans.), conscribo.

Enmity, inimicitia, odium, invidia.

Enough, satis. Enough and to spare, satis superque.

Enquire, quaero, rogo, interrogo; percontor.

Enquiry, hold an, quaestionem habeo de.

Enraged, iratus.

Enroll, inscribo.

Enter, in eo, intro, ingredior, venio in.

Enter political life, ad rem publicam me confero (or accedo).

Enter in accounts (as received), acceptum refero.

Enterprise, inceptum.

Enterprising, audax, impiger.

Enthusiasm, ardor, studium, alacritas.

Entice, elicio.

Entire, totus; (unimpaired) integer.

Entirely, omnino; (or use totus with subject)—

The house was entirely destroyed, domus tota periit.

I entirely disagree, totus dissentio.

Entrance, aditus, introitus, os, ostium.

Entreat, precor, oro; (earnestly) flagito.

Entreaty, obsecratio, preces (plur.).

Entrenchments, munitiones, opera.

Entrust, credo, mando, committo, permitto.

Enumerate, enumero.

Envoy, legatus, nuntius.

Envy (noun), invidia.

(verb), invideo.

Envious, invidus.

Equal, par; (fair or favourable) aequus; (of equal age, contemporary) aequalis; on equal

Equal, cont.

terms, aequo Marte, aequa contentione.

Equally, pariter, aequae.

Equinox, equinoctium.

Equip, paro, orno, instruo; (a ship), armo.

Erase, erado, deleo.

Err, erro.

Error, (blunder) error; (in the abstract) errare (infin.). Error is common to men, humanum est errare.

Escape (noun), fuga, effugium.

(verb), effugio.

Escort (noun), comitatus.

(verb), comitor.

Especially, praesertim.

Esouse, (give a daughter in marriage), filiam (alicui) colloco; (take in marriage), uxorem duco; in matrimonium (aliquam) duco; (embrace a cause), amplector.

Establish, statuo, constituo, instituo, stabilio.

Esteem (verb), aestimo, habeo.

(noun), opinio, fama.

Estimate, aestimo.

Eternal, aeternus, sempiternus.

Evade, subterfugio (acc.); (a law), legi fraudem facio.

Even, etiam; quoque (enclitic); before adj., vel. **Not even, ne . . . quidem.**

Evening, vesper. In the evening, vespere or vesperi.

Towards evening, sub vesperum.

On the following evening, post-ridie vespere.

Event, res, casus. In the event of . . . , si forte.

At all events, certe.

Ever (at any time), unquam; (always) semper; (at times) aliquando; if ever, si quando; more beautiful than ever, solito pulchrior.

Every, omnis (in the plural); everybody, omnes; everything, omnia; every day (daily), cotidie; (from day to day) (implying change), in dies; everywhere, ubique.

Evidence, indicium, testimonium.

To summon to give evidence testem (aliquem) cito.

Evidence, cont.

To give evidence, testimonium dico.

Evident, manifestus. It is evident, apparet.

Evil, malus, pravus, improbus.

(noun), malum, incommodum.

Exact, impero (acc. of thing and dat. of person).

To exact hostages of the Gauls, obsides Gallis impero.

To exact punishment, supplicium (poenam) sumo (ab, ex, or de).

Examination, quaestio. Without any examination, incognita causa.

Examine, perspicio; (hold an inquiry) aliquid (de aliqua re) quaero, causam cognosco; quaestionem habeo (in aliquem, de aliqua re).

Example, exemplum. To be an example, exemplo sum.

Exasperate, irrito.

Excel, praesto, antecello, supero.

Excellent, egregius, optimus.

Except (prep.), praeter.

(conj.), nisi.

(verb), excipio.

Excessive, nimius.

Exchange, muto, permuto.

Exchange (noun), in exchange for, pro.

Excite, excito, concito, erigo.

Excitement, trepidatio. To be in a state of excitement, trepido, concurso.

Exclaim, ex- or con-clamo.

Exclude, excludo.

Excuse, excuso. (Excuso often means to 'plead in excuse', as valetudinem excusat, he pleads ill-health.)

Execute, (achieve) efficio, exsequor; (put to death) see 'kill'.

Execution (punishment), supplicium.

Executioner, carnifex.

Exercise, exerceo; (use), utor.

Exertions, labor, sudor.

Exhaust, exhaurio. Be exhausted, deficio; fatigatus, confectus sum.

Exhibit, expono, exhibeo; (games) edo.

Exhort, ex- or co-hortor; admoneo.

Exile (an), exsul, profugus.

(abstr.), exsilium.

Exile, cont.

To be in exile, exsulo.

To drive into exile, in exsilium pello.

Exist, sum.

Expect, expecto, spero. (N.B.

Expecto is not commonly used with acc. and infin.; its constructions are, simple acc., dum, or ut.)

Expectation, spes, opinio; contrary to expectation, praeter spem, opinionem; more quickly than was expected, opinione celerius.

Expediency, utilitas.

Expedient, utilis. 'It is expedient, expedit.

Expel, expello.

Expense, sumptus. Expenses, impensa.

Experience (noun), usus, experientia, peritia.

(verb), utor, experior; (enjoy) fruor.

Experienced, rerum peritus.

Expiate, luo.

Expiation, piaculum.

Explain, expono, explico, edo, demonstro.

Exploits, res gestae.

Explore, exploro.

Expose, expono; expose any one to (danger, &c.), obicio aliquem (periculo); (confute) coarguo.

Expostulate, deprecor.

Expound, expono.

Express, exprimo, edo.

Extend, pateo.

Extensive, latus.

Extent, very often to be turned by Quantum (see chap. XI).

You do not know the extent of the danger, Nescis quantum sit periculum.

To a great extent, magna ex parte.

To such an extent, adeo, sic, ita.

Extortion, res repetundae.

Extraordinary, praeter spem.

Extravagant, sumptuosus.

Extreme, extremus. Extremely, use superlative, or see very.

Extremity (the extremity of . . .), use extremus in agreement with noun.

Exult in, exsulto, me iacto, glorior.

Eye, oculus.

Before our eyes, in oculis.

With my own eyes I saw it, ipse vidi.

F**Face** (noun), vultus, facies. In the face of such difficulties, in rebus tam adversis.

(verb), obviam eo (dat.), occurro (dat.); oboeo; (put to the proof) experior. To face an attack, (impetum) sustineo.

To face death, mortem oboeo.

Fact, res; in fact, (in reality) re vera; (in fine) denique.**Faction**, factio, pars (usually in plur.).**Fail**, (be wanting) deficio (abs. or with acc.); desum (dat.); (not to succeed) nihil ago.**Fair**, (beautiful) pulcher; (of places or scenery) amoenus; (just, impartial) aequus.

In fair fight, aequo Marte.

A fair sky, caelum serenum.

A fair wind, ventus secundus.

Fair weather, tranquilla tempestas.

A fair amount of corn, satis frumenti.

Faith, fides. I put faith in you, fidem tibi habeo.**Faithful**, fidelis, fidus.**Faithfully**, fideliter.**Fall**, cado; fall into, incido; fall (in battle), occido, pereo; fall into ruin, corruo; fall headlong, praecipito; it falls out that, accidit ut, evenit ut; fall upon (attack), adgredior, oppugno; fall into the power of, penes aliquem fio; fall in with, occurro (dat.), obviam fio (dat.); fall down, labor, delabor.

It falls to my lot, mihi contingit, obtingit.

He fell at my feet, ad pedes mihi se proiecit.

To fall on one's neck, colla amplecti.

At length the city fell, urbs tandem capta est.

Fallen, addictus.**False** (of persons), fallax, mendax; be false to, desum, deficio (ab, or acc.); (of things), falsus, fictus.**Falsehood** (lie), mendacium; (lying) mentiri; tell a falsehood, mentior.**Fame**, gloria, fama, rumor.**Family**, familia; his family, sui. (adj.), domesticus.**Famine**, fames, inopia.**Famous**, clarus, praeclarus, insignis.**Fancy** (verb), puto, opinor, nescio an.**Far** (far off), procul; far from (prep.) procul ab; far from (adv.) parum; far removed from (adj.) alienissimus ab; by far (in comparisons) multo, longe; so far as, quoad; as far as, usque ad; too far, longius; so far as I am concerned, quod ad me attinet.**Fare** (noun), (food) victus; (passage-money) naulum.

(verb), me gero, me habeo, mihi evenit; fare well, valeo.

Farewell, vale, ave; to say farewell to, iubeo valere.**Farm**, fundus, praedium, ager.**Farmer**, agricola, colonus.**Farmhouse**, villa.**Farther**, ultra.**Fashion** (verb), fingo.

(noun), mos; after the fashion of, more; after my fashion, more meo.

Fast (adj.), celer, velox; (adv.) celeriter, velociter.**Fasten on** (a helmet or badge), accomodo.**Fastness**, castellum.**Fat** (rich), pinguis.**Fatal**, funestus, perniciosus, mortifer.**Fate, fatum**; (personified) Fortuna; The Fates, Fata, Parcae.**Fated**, fatalis.**Father**, pater; father-in-law, socer.**Fatherland**, patria.**Fatigue** (noun), lassitudo. (verb), fatigo.

Fatigued, fatigatus, fessus.

Fault, culpa, delictum, vitium. To commit a fault, pecco.**Favour** (verb), faveo (dat.).

(noun), beneficium, gratia. This is in our favour, hoc a nobis est. I do you this favour, hoc tibi gratificor.

I win your favour, apud te gratiam inco.

- Favourable**, secundus; (suitable) idoneus; (propitious) faustus.
- Fawn upon**, adulator.
- Fear** (noun), timor, metus; (panic) pavor; for fear that, ne.
(verb), timeo, metuo, pertimesco, vereor (often with notion of respect).
He fears for his safety, salutis suae diffidit.
- Feast** (verb), epulor.
(noun), convivium, epulae, dapes.
- Features**, vultus (sing.).
- Feed** (trans.), pascō; (intrans.), pascor; feed on, vescor (abl.).
- Feel** (perceive), sentio, percipio.
- Feelings**, animus.
- Fell** (trees), succido.
- Fellow** (contemptuous), homo, iste; (companion), comes, socius.
Fellow-citizen (or, fellow-subject), civis.
- Female**, femina.
- Ferocity** (of an act), atrocitas.
- Ferry** (verb), transveho, traicio.
- Fertile**, fertilis, fecundus.
- Fetch**, apporto.
- Fetters**, catenae.
- Fever**, febris.
- Few**, pauci; very few, perpauca; how few, quam pauci; how few there are who . . . Quotus quisque est qui (with subj.).
- Fickle**, levis, mobilis.
- Fictitious**, fictus.
- Fidelity**, fides, constantia.
- Field**, ager, pratum, arvum; field of battle, acies; in the field (in war), militiae; to take the field, milites educo.
- Fierce**, atrox, ferus, ferox, saevus.
- Fiercely**, acriter, ferociter, vehementer.
- Fifth**, quintus.
- Fiftieth**, quinquagesimus.
- Fig**, fig-tree, ficus.
- Fight** (noun), pugna, proelium.
(verb), pugno, dimico, contendo, proelior; proelium facio or committo.
Fight against, or with, pugnare contra.
To be fighting (in the army), stipendia mereo.
Fighting went on, pugnatum est.
In fighting order, acie instructa.
- Fill**, compleo, impleo, repleo. To fill any one with fear, terrorem alicui incutio.
- Finally**, denique.
- Find**, (discover by search) reperio, comperio; (by chance) invenio; (ascertain) cognosco, intellego.
Find fault with, culpo, increpo, incuso, vitupero.
- Fine** (adj.), pulcher, praeclarus, amoenus.
(verb), mulcto.
- Finger**, digitus.
- Finish**, conficio, perficio, finio.
- Fir** (-tree), abies.
- Fire**, ignis. Set on fire, incendo; be on fire, flagro, ardeo.
With fire and sword, igni ferroque.
- Firm**, constans, firmus.
- First**, primus. In the first place, primo; for the first time, primum.
The first of a month, Kalendae.
He was the first to do this, primus hoc fecit.
- Fish**, pisces.
- Fit** (noun) of madness, furor subitus.
- Fit** (adj.), aptus (ad), idoneus (ad).
He is fit to become king, dignus est qui rex fiat.
- Fit out** (equip), paro, instruo.
- Fix**, figo, defigo; constituo.
- Fixed**, certus, fixus, constitutus.
- Flame**, flamma.
- Flank**, latus; on the flank, ab latere.
- Flatter**, assentor (dat.), adulator (acc., rarely dat.), blandior (dat.).
- Flee**, fugio, terga verto, terga do, fugae me mando.
- Fleet**, classis.
- Fleeting**, fugax.
- Flesh**, caro.
- Flight**, fuga; (of birds) volatus.
Put to flight, fugo, fundo.
Take to flight, terga verto (or do), in fugam me do.
- Fling**, iacio and compounds.
- Float**, nato.
- Flock** (noun), grex.
(verb, flock together), congregor.
- Flog**, verbero, caedo. Be flogged, vapulo.
- Flood** (noun), diluvium, diluvies.
(verb, overflow), inundo.

Flourish, floreō.

Flow, fluo (and compounds).

Flower, flos; (of army) robur.

Fly, fugio (and compounds); (of birds) volo.

Fly to arms, ad arma concurro.

(noun), musca.

Fold (noun), sinus.

(verb), plico, implico.

Follow, sequor (and compounds); follow up, insector.

It does not follow that, non idcirco.

Following (day, month, &c.), proximus, posterus.

Followers, comites, socii (or simply sui).

Folly, stultitia, dementia (or use adj. stultus).

Fond, amans, studiosus, cupidus (gen.).

Food, cibus, victus; want of food, inedia. To get food (of soldiers), frumentor.

Fool, stultus; (jester, buffoon), scurra.

Foolish, stultus, ineptus, insipiens.

Foot, pes; foot-soldier, pedes.

The foot of the mountain, mons imus.

On foot, pedibus.

For (conj.), nam, enim, quippe, &c.

(prep.), (on behalf of) pro; (owing to) prae.

To die for one's country, pro patria mori.

You will not see the sun for spears, solem prae iaculorum multitudine non videbis.

For a rampart they had piled up waggons, pro vallo carros obicerant.

For their population, their country was small, pro multitudine hominum, angustos habebant fines.

We love virtue for its own sake, virtutem per se ipsam diligimus.

(A man of much ability) for a Carthaginian, ut in homine Poeno, ut est captus Poenorum.

To take thought for the future, in futurum (posterum) providere.

For a small sum, vili; for ten talents, decem talentis.

For (prep.) *cont.*

To exchange certain peace for uncertain victory, pacis possessionem victoria incerta mutare (the abl. is used either for the thing given or the thing received in exchange).

For some time past, iamdudum; for many years, multos annos.

For this reason, ob hanc causam; for many reasons, multis de causis; for love, amoris causa; for nothing, gratis.

Forage, pabulor.

Forbearance, indulgentia.

Forbid, veto; impero ne.

Force (noun), vis; by force of arms, vi et armis.

(A body of men) manus; forces, copiae.

In full force, summa vi, summis copiis.

(verb), cogo.

Ford (noun), vadum.

(verb), vado transire.

Forefathers, maiores (never patres in prose).

Foreign, peregrinus, externus.

Foremost, primus.

Foresee, provideo, prospicio, praesentio.

Forest, silva.

Foretell, praedico, praesagio, auguror.

Forget, obliviscor (gen.).

Forgetful, immemor, obliviosus.

Forgive, ignosco (dat.); veniam do (dat. of person, gen. of thing); condono (dat. of person, acc. of thing).

Form (noun), figura, forma.

(verb), fingo, formo; form a plan, consilium capio, in eo; form a line (of battle), aciem instruo.

Former, prior, superior, pristinus. The former . . . the latter, ille . . . hic.

Formerly, olim, quondam, antea, antehac, prius.

Formidable, gravis, metuendus, formidandus.

Fortifications, munimenta, munitiones, propugnacula.

Fortify, munio.

Fortress, castellum, arx.

Fortunate, felix, prosperus.

Fortunately, feliciter, prospere; peropportune.

Fortune, fortuna (good or bad); felicitas (good); casus (generally bad).

Forum, forum.

Foul, foedus, nefarius.

Found (a city), condo; (a colony) deduco.

Founder, conditor; fundator.

Fountain, fons.

Four, quattuor. Fourth, quartus; fourteen, quattuordecim; four hundred, quadringenti.

Fox, vulpes.

France, Gallia.

Fraud, fraus, dolus, fallacia.

Free (adj.), liber; free from, vacuus, expers; free from care, securus; free from blame, extra culpam. (verb), libero; (of slaves) manumitto.

Freedom, libertas.

Freedman, libertus, libertinus.

Frequent (adj.), creber, frequens. (verb), celebros, frequento.

Frequently, saepe, crebro.

Fresh (new), novus, recens; (not tired) integer.

Friend, amicus; close friend, amicissimus.

Friendship, amicitia. I enjoy the friendship of Crassus, Crasso utor amico, or, Crassum in numero amicorum habeo.

Frighten, terreo, perterreo.

Frog, rana.

From, a, ab.

Front, in, a fronte (or use adversus, adj.). Front rank, prima acies.

Frugal, frugi, parvus.

Fruit, fructus, fruges (plur.).

Fruitful, fecundus.

Fuel, to add fuel (metaphor), faces subicio.

Fugitive, profugus, fugitivus (or use fugio).

Full, expleo; (a promise) praesto.

Full, full of, plenus (abl.). At full speed, quam celerrime; (of a rider) equo incitato; (of a ship) cursu incitato.

Function, munus.

Funds, pecuniae (plur.).

Funeral, funus (or plur.), exsequiae, pompa. Funeral pile, rogos.

Furnish, see provide.

Furrow, sulcus.

Further, ultra, praeterea, longius.

Fury, ira. (Rabies and furor may be used for 'frenzy' or 'rage', but not for mere 'anger'.) With the utmost fury, quam vehementissime.

Future, futura (nom. plur.), res futurae. For the future, in posterum; in futurum.

G

Gain (noun), emolumentum, utilitas, lucrum, quaestus. It is a source of gain to me, est mihi quaestui. (verb), acquiro, consequor; to gain time, tempus duco; gain strength, vires augeo; gain possession of, potior (abl. or gen.); (suae) dicionis facere.

Gallant, fortis.

Gallop, at full, equo admisso or incitato.

Game, ludus; the (public) games, ludi. To hold games; ludos celebrare.

Garden, hortus.

Garment, vestis, vestimentum, vestitus.

Garrison, praesidium, custodes.

Gate, porta.

Gather (trans.), cogo, convoco, colligo.

(intrans.), convenio, congregor.

Gaul, Gallia; a Gaul, Gallus.

Gaze at, intueor, specto.

General, dux; (commander-in-chief) imperator. General's tent, praetorium.

General (adj.), communis; the general welfare, salus communis. It is the general belief, inter omnes constat, vulgo creditur.

Generally, vulgo, plerumque, ferme. It generally happens that, plerumque fit ut.

Generation, aetas, saeculum.

Genial, comis.

Geniality, comitas.

Genius, ingenium.

Gentle, lenis, mitis, clemens.

'Gentlemen of the Jury', Iudices.

Gentleness, lenitas, clementia.

Gently, leniter, molliter.

German, Germanus.

Germany, Germania.

Genuine, sincerus; verus.

Gesture, gestus.

Get, adipiscor, nanciscor ; paro.

Get ready, paro ; get out of (escape), evado ; get to, see reach.

Giant, gigas.

Gift, donum, munus.

Give, do (aliquid alicui) ; dono (aliquem aliqua re).

Give back, reddo ; give up, trado ; (abandon) relinquo, omitto, desisto ab.

Give way (retreat), loco cedo, pedem refero ; give way to, cedo, (temper, &c.) indulgeo.

Give a verdict, sententiam dico ; give a name, nomen indo ; give my word, fidem interpono.

Glad, gladly, libens, libenter.

Glad, to be, gaudeo, delector.

Glade, saltus.

Gladiator, gladiator.

Gladness, laetitia, gaudium.

Glen, saltus.

Globe (earth), orbis terrarum.

Gloomy, tristis.

Glorious, praeclarus.

Gloriously, maxima laude.

Glory, gloria, fama, decus.

Glow, candeo.

Gluttony, gula.

Go, eo, me confero ; go away, abeo, discedo ; go back, redeo, regredior ; go on, progredior ; go out, exeo, excedo, egredior ; go into, ineo, ingredior ; go down, descendo ; go to meet, obviam eo (dat.) ; go on doing, persevero ; to go well (of affairs), prospere evenire.

Goat, caper, capella.

God, Deus ; Divus. (But the Latin equivalent will often be Di, or Di immortales.)

Gold, aurum.

Golden, aureus.

Good, bonus ; goods, bona ; goodwill, benevolentia ; good sense, prudentia. To be good for any one, prosum, usui sum, ex usu sum (all with dat.).

Goodness, virtus ; benignitas.

Goose, anser.

Govern, rego, administro, leges impono ; praesum (dat.) ; impero (dat.).

Government, the, (ii) qui reipublicae praesunt, qui rempublicam administrant, magistratus. The

Government, the, cont.

Roman Government, Senatus Populusque Romanus (S.P.Q.R.).

Governor (of a city), praefectus ; (of a province) proconsul.

Gradually, paulatim, sensim.

Grandfather, avus.

Grandson, nepos ; great-grandson, pronepos.

Grant, do, mando, trado.

Grasp, corripio.

Grass, gramen, herba.

Grateful, gratus ; beneficii m'emor.

Gratify, indulgeo.

Gratitude, gratus animus ; show gratitude, gratiam refero ; feel gratitude, gratiam habeo.

Great, magnus ; so great, such a great, tantus ; (distinguished) praeclarus, praestantissimus.

Greatly, magnopere, maxime, valde, vehementer.

Greatness, magnitudo.

Greedy, avidus.

Greek, Graecus.

Green, viridis ; to be green, vireo.

Greet, saluto.

Grief, dolor, luctus.

Grieve, doleo ; be grieved at, aegre fero, lugeo.

Groan (noun), gemitus ; (angry outcry) convicium.

(verb), gemo, ingemisco.

Ground, terra, humus, locus, solum ; (met. for reason) causa.

On the ground, humi (loc.).

To hold one's ground, in loco persto, resisto, sustineo (impetum or vim hostium).

Groundless, falsus.

Grove, lucus, nemus.

Grow, (increase) cresco ; (become) fio ; (be born) nascor ; grow up, adoleasco ; grow ripe, maturesco ; grow old, senesco.

Grudge, (bear a grudge against) invideo, succenseo (dat.).

Grumble, queror.

Guard, guardian, custos, custodia (oft. plur.). Off one's guard, improvidus, incautus.

Guard (verb), custodio ; guard against, caveo ; be on guard, excubo, in statione sum.

Guest, hospes.

Guide, dux.

Guile, dolus.

Guilt, scelus (see crime).

Gulity, nocens, noxius, sons. To find guilty, condemno; to be found guilty, condemnor.

Guise, in the guise of, more, pro.

Gulf, (bay) sinus; - (interval) intervallum.

H

Habit, to be in the habit of, soleo.

Hackneyed, tritus.

Hair, capillus, crinis (usually in plur.).

Half (subst.), dimidium; half as many again, dimidio plures. (adj.), dimidius.

Hall, atrium.

Halt, consisto.

Hamper, impedio.

Hand, manus. In the hands of, in potestate; at hand, prope; to be at hand, adsum; to hand over, trado, permitto.

Hang (trans.), pendo, suspendo. (intrans.), pendeo.

To hang back, cesso, detrecto; hang over (intrans.), immineo.

Happens, (of bad things) accidit; (of good things) contingit; (of either) evenit. (N.B. 'Accidunt mala; contingunt bona; eveniunt utraque'.)

It often happens that, Saepe fit ut; as generally happens, quod plerumque fit.

Happiness, beate vivere; beatum esse; beata vita.

Happy, beatus, felix.

Harass, laccio, vexo.

Harbour, portus.

Hard, durus, difficilis; hard to say, difficile dictu. To be hard pressed, premor, laboro.

Hardly, vix, aegre.

Hardship, labor, incommodum; hardships, molestiae.

Hare, lepus.

Harm (noun), malum, damnum. (verb), noceo (dat.), laedo.

Harsh, asper.

Harvest, messis.

Haste, celeritas, properatio. There is need of haste, properato opus est, properandum est.

Hasten, propero, festino, contendo.

Hat, pileus.

Hate, odi; to be hated, to be an object of hatred, odio sum.

Hateful, odiosus, invisus; he is hateful to me, odio est mihi.

Hatred, odium.

Haughty, superbus.

Haul, duco, traho; to haul up boats, naves subduco (lit. haul from below): (anchor) tollo, solvo.

Have, habeo, possideo. I have a house, est mihi domus.

To have a house built, domum aedificandum curo.

Havoc, strages.

Head, caput. To be head of, praesum.

Headlong, praeceps.

Heal, medeor (dat.); sano.

Health, sanitas; valetudo (often of bad health). To enjoy good health, optima valetudine utor, (bene) valeo.

Healthy, (of persons) sanus, validus; (of places) saluber.

Heap (noun), cumulus.

(verb), cumulo, onero. To heap abuse, insult, &c., on any one, onerare aliquem maledictis, contumeliis, &c.

Hear, audio; hear if, cognosco, certior fio de.

Hearing, use participle; in my hearing, me audiente. He was condemned without a hearing, causa indicta (or incognita) condemnatus est.

Heart, cor; (met. for affections, spirit) pectus, animus; (disposition) ingenium.

Hearth, focus.

Heat, aestus, calor.

Heaven, caelum; (metaph.) Di immortales.

Heavy, gravis.

Height, altitudo; (metaph.) the height of folly, stultitia summa.

Heir, heres.

Helmet, galea.

Help (noun), auxilium, opem; to be a help, auxilio, subsidio, esse. (verb), see assist.

I cannot help (writing), facere non possum quin (scribam).

Helpful, utilis.

Helpless, inops.

Hen, gallina.

Hence, hinc.

Herd, grex, armentum ; (of a crowd) vulgus.

Here, hic ; (meaning hither) huc ; am here, adsum.

Hero, vir ; (demi-god) heros.

Hesitate, dubito, haesito ; cunctor.

Hesitation, dubitatio, mora, cunctatio.

Hide, celo, condo ; occulto ; (sometimes dissimulo).

Hiding place, latebrae.

High, altus ; **higher and highest** are often superior, summus ; high-spirited, ferox.

Highly, to value highly, magni aestimo ; to honour highly, in summo honore habeo.

Highway, via.

Hill, collis.

Hinder, impedio, obsto (dat.).

Hindrance, impedimentum.

Hire, conduco.

Historian, rerum scriptor.

Hither, huc ; hither and thither, huc illuc ; ultro citroque.

Hitherto, adhuc ; hactenus.

Hoard, acervus, copia.

Hoarse, raucus.

Hold, teneo. **Hold back**, retineo ; hold possession of, obtineo ; hold command, imperium obtineo ; (believe) credo, duco, censeo (sometimes volo) ; (occupy) occupo ; hold one's ground, resisto, in loco persto ; hold on one's course, cursum teneo ; hold in esteem, in honore habeo ; hold cheap, parvi, minimi, aestimo ; hold games, ludos celebro ; hold a fortress, castellum defendo ; hold out (resist), resisto, impetum hostium sustineo ; (of supplies) suppeto ; hold one's peace, conticesco.

Holidays, feriae.

Hollow, cavus.

Holy, sacer.

Home, domus ; **homes**, penates, foci. At home, domi (loc.). (A possessive pron. may agree with this loc. : domi tuae, at your house.)

For hearth and home, pro aris et focus.

Home-sickness, suorum desiderium.

Honest, probus.

Honesty, probitas ; quod honestum est.

Honour, (distinction) honor ; (personal honour, good faith) fides ; (self-respect) dignitas ; (what is honourable, as opp. to what is expedient) honestas.

For the sake of honour, honoris causa ; it does you honour, est tibi honori.

(verb), orno, honoro, prosequor. I honour him, honorem ei habeo, in honore eum habeo.

Honourable, (of persons) probus ; (of things) honestus.

Hope (noun), spes ; to give up hope, spem abicio, despero. (verb), spero.

Horn, cornu.

Horried, am, perhorresco.

Horse, equus.

Horseman, horse-soldier, eques.

Hospitality, hospitium ; rights of hospitality, ius hospitii.

Host, hospes.

Hostage, obses.

Hostile, inimicus, infestus.

Hot, calidus ; hot-headed, ferox, ingenio fervidus, (vir) animi fervidi ; to be hot, caleo ; to grow hot, calesco.

Hour, hora.

House, domus, aedes (plur.). In my house, apud me (chez moi) ; or, domi meae (loc.).

Household, familia.

How (adv. of manner), quo modo, quo pacto, quemadmodum.

(adv. of degree), quam. How great, quantus ; how much, quantum ; how long, quamdiu ; how often, quoties ; how many, quot (indecl. adj.).

However, tamen.

Human, humanus ; human beings, homines.

Humble, humilis, tenuis. Humble means, tenuis fortuna ; of humble origin, humili loco natus.

Humour, gratificor (dat.), morem gero (dat.).

Hundred, centum ; a hundred times, centiens.

Hundredth, centesimus.

Hunger, fames, inedia.

Hungry, ieiunus, esuriens. To be hungry; esurio.
Hunt, venor.
Hunter, venator.
Hurl, compounds of iacio (conicio, &c.).
Hurry, festino, propero, trepido; hurry away from, avolo. (noun), trepidatio.
Hurt, noceo (dat.), laedo; damnum infero (dat.).
Hurtful, noxius.
Husband, vir, maritus.
Husbandman, colonus, agricola.

I

I, ego.
Ice, glacies.
Idle, ignavus; otiosus; (vain) vanus.
If, si; (whether) num.
Ignorance, inscientia, ignorantia.
Ignorant (of), inscius, ignarus, imperitus (gen.). To be ignorant of, ignoro, nescio.
Ill, aeger. To be ill, aegroto; to take ill, aegre fero, moleste fero.
Ill-disposed, malevolus.
Ill-natured, difficilis, morosus.
Illness, morbus.
Illtreat, iniuriam infero (dat.); iniuria afficio (acc.).
Illustrious, praeclarus, praestans.
Ill-will, malevolentia.
Image, imago.
Imagine, puto, reor; mente concipio, fingo.
Imitate, imitor.
Immediately, statim, confestim, continuo, protinus.
Immense, ingens.
Immensely, plurimum.
Immortal, immortalis.
Impart, impertio, communico (cum).
Impartial, aequus, iustus.
Impassable, invius, impeditus.
Impetuous, vehemens, violentus.
Impious, vihus, nefarius.
Implant, inserto.
Importance: it is of importance, interest, refert (to me, mea; to Caesar, Caesaris).
Important, gravis, necessarius.
Impossible: it is impossible that, non (nullo modo) fieri potest ut.
Impregnable, inexpugnabilis.
Impression, (opinion) opinio. It

Impression, *cont.*

makes no impression on me, nihil me (or, animum meum) commovet.

Imprison, in vincula (or, in carcerem) conicere.

Imprisonment, vincula.

Improve, in melius mutare (trans.), mutari (intrans.).

Impunity, with, impune.

Impute, ascribo, imputo. He imputes this to me as a fault, hoc mihi culpa dat (or, vitio vertit).

In, in; in the power of, penes; in the presence of, coram. In regard to, quod attinet ad.

Inborn, insitus, innatus.

Incapable (morally), alienissimus ab (or use abhorreo).

Incite, adduco, impello, incito.

Inclined to, promptus ad. I am inclined to think, haud scio an, nescio an.

Include, contineo, includo.

Inconsistent with, abhorrens or alienus ab.

Increase (trans.), augeo; (intrans.), cresco.

Incur, subeo, incurro; incur loss, damnum capio.

Incursion, incursio.

Indebted: I am indebted to you for this, hoc tibi acceptum refero.

Indecisive, anceps.

Indeed, quidem; (in truth) revera; (at least) saltem, certe.

Indict, reum facio; accuso.

Indictment, crimen.

Indifferent, neglegens. Be indifferent to, parvi (nihili, flocci) facio.

Indignation, dolor, ira (or use verb).

Indolence, pigritia, ignavia.

Indolent, piger, ignavus.

Induce, adduco, persuadeo (dat.).

Indulge, indulgeo (dat.).

Indulgence, (pardon) venia.

Inexperienced, imperitus (see ignorant).

Infamous, nefarius, scelestus. To be branded as infamous, ignominia notor.

Infant, infans.

Infantry, pedites (plur.), peditatus. (adj.), pedester.

Inferior, inferior

Infirm, infirmus.

Inflame, incendo, accendo.

Inflit, adficio (aliquem aliqua re); infero (aliquid alicui). Inflit punishment on, poenas sumo de.

Influence, auctoritas, gratia. To have great influence (with), plurimum valere (apud).

Influenced, permotus, adductus.

Inform, certiorum facio (aliquem); doceo.

Ingratitude, animus ingratus.

Inhabit, incolo, colo, habito.

Inhabitants, (of a country) incolae; (of a town) oppidani; (of a city) cives.

Injure, see hurt.

Injury, damnum, iniuria.

Inn, deversorium, taberna, caupona.

Innate, innatus, (natura) insitus.

Innkeeper, caupo.

Innocent, insons, innocens, extra culpam.

Inquire, see enquire.

Insect, insectum.

Inside, intra.

Insist, insto.

Insolence, adrogantia, superbia.

Inspiration, adflatus (divinus).

Inspire, inicio (spem, metum, &c., alicui).

Instance, exemplum.

Instantly, see immediately.

Instead of, pro (abl.); loco (gen.). Instead of helping me, he hindered me. Cum me adiuvare deberet, impediit. Tantum abfuit ut me adiuvaret, ut impediret. Non modo me non adiuvit, sed etiam impediit.

Instigation, at the instigation of Balbus, auctore (or suadente) Balbo.

Instruct, erudio, doceo.

Insult (noun), contumelia, iniuria. (verb), contumelias impono (dat.).

Insurrection, seditio.

Intellect, mens, ingenium.

Intend, in animo habeo, est mihi in animo. It is my intention to come, venturus sum.

Intent: I am intent on, operam do, studeo (dat.).

Intention, with the intention of, eo consilio ut (or use part. in -rus).

Intentionally, consilio, consilio; ex industria.

Interest, (advantage) utilitas, com-
moda (plur.); (influence with
those in power) gratia; (in-
terest on money) faenus; usura.

I consult your interests, tibi
consulo.

It is to my interest, interest mea.

It is to the interest of Caesar,
interest Caesaris. (See page 55.)

Interfere with, intervenio (dat.).

Interior, (of a country) pars interior.
Interval, intervallum.

Interview, convenio (acc.), colloquor
(cum).

Intimate, familiaris. To be on
intimate terms with, familiariter
utor.

Intoxicated, ebrius.

Invade, incursionem facio in, bellum
(or arma) infero; invado.

Invent, (fabricate) fingo.

Invest, (a city) circumsedeo;
(money) colloco.

Invite, invito.

Involve, be involved in, versor in
(abl.); occurro (dat.).

Iron (noun), ferrum.

(adj.), ferreus.

Island, insula.

Issue, eventus. We await the issue
of this matter, quo evasura sit
haec res, exspectamus.

Ivy, hedera.

J

January, Ianuarius (sc. mensis).

Javelin, pilum, iaculum.

Jealous, aemulus; I am jealous of
you, invideo tibi.

Jealousy, invidia.

Jest (noun), iocus; in jest, per iocum.
(verb), iocor, cavillor.

Join (trans.), iungo, coniungo;
(intrans.), me iungo cum, me
adiungo (dat. or ad with acc.);
join battle, proelium committo.

Journey (noun), iter.

(verb), iter facio.

Joy, gaudium, laetitia.

Joyful, laetus.

Judge (noun), iudex, quaestor.

(verb), reor, iudico, existimo.

Judgement, (decision) iudicium; ar-
bitrium; (good judgement) con-
silio; my judgement is other-
wise, aliter iudico.

Jump, salio (and compounds).

June, (mensis) Iunius.

Junior, iunior, natu minor.

Jurisdiction, ius.

Jury, iudices.

Just (adj.), iustus.

(adv. lately), modo; nuperrime.

Just as much as, aequè ac, haud aliter quam.

Justice, iustitia; to administer justice, ius reddo.

Justify, excuso.

Justly, iure.

K

Keen, acer.

Keeness, acies.

Keep, servo, conservo; teneo (and compounds); keep back (from), retineo (ab), detineo (ab), arceo (abl.), prohibeo; keep off, arceo (ab); keep from (intrans.), abstineo; keep within, contineo; keep up (maintain), servo, tueor; keep out, excludo; to keep one's word (keep promises), fidem praesto, promissa praesto, promissis sto; keep flocks, greges pasco; keep laws, &c. (cherish, observe), colo.

He was keeping his father in ignorance of this, hoc patrem celabat.

Kettle, lebes, olla.

Key, clavis.

Kill, interficere; (cut down) occido.

Put to death (gen. by poison, starvation, or other means than a weapon) neco. Massacre, trucid; slaughter, butcher, iugulo. Put to the sword, caedo; execute, supplicio adficio. Kill oneself, commit suicide, mortem sibi consciscere.

N.B. For the passive (to be killed) various words are used in addition to the passives of the above, as morior (die), pereo (perish), mortem obo (meet one's end), cado, concido (fall in battle), vita excedo (depart this life); passives of absumo and interimo (to be cut off or carried off, by sickness, &c.).

Kind (adj.), benignus, amicus. A kind deed, beneficium, officium.

Kindly (adv.), benigne, amice; kindly disposed, benevolus.

Kind (sort), genus; of this kind, huiusmodi; of that kind, eiusmodi; of every kind, use omnis; of what kind, qualis; of that kind, talis.

I did not know the kind of man he was, qualis esset nesciebam.

Kindness, benignitas, humanitas, benevolentia; act of kindness, beneficium.

King, rex; king's (royal), regius.

Kingdom, kingly power, regnum.

Kinsmen, propinqui, necessarii.

Kiss (noun), osculum, basium.

(verb), osculor.

Kitchen, culina.

Knife, culter.

Knight, eques.

Know, (of things) scio; (of persons) novi.

(To ascertain, learn facts) cognosco; comperio.

(To understand) intellego.

(To learn by the senses, perceive) sentio, percipio.

(To recognize persons or things known before) agnosco.

Not to know, nescio, ignoro.

Knowledge, scientia, cognitio (corresponding to scio and cognosco respectively).

(Of persons) consuetudo.

(Learning) doctrina.

So far as I know, or to my knowledge, quantum scio, or quod sciam.

L

Labour (noun), labor.

(verb), laboro, operam do.

Lack, (to be without) careo; (to have need of) egeo, indigeo (gen. or abl.); now nothing is lacking to me, iam mihi nil deest.

Ladder, scala.

Laden, oneratus, onustus.

Laggard, ignavus.

Lake, lacus.

Lamb, agnus.

Lame, claudus.

Lament, lamentor, deploro, queror.

Lamentation, lamentatio.

Lamp, lampas, lucerna.

Land (noun), terra, ager.

(verb) (intrans.), e nave egredior; (trans.), expono.

Landing, egressus; or use expono.

After the landing of the troops, expositis militibus.

Language, (conversation) sermo; (a language) lingua.

Languid, languidus.

Languish, languesco.

Lap, gremium.

Large, amplius, magnus.

Last (adj.), (of a number) ultimus, postremus; (before the present) proximus.

At last, postremo, tandem, denique; to the last, ad extremum. (verb), duro, permaneo.

Late (adj.), serus; (recent) recens. (adv.) sero. Too late, sero, serius.

Late at night, multa nocte; till late in the night, ad multam noctem.

Late in life, iam senex, iam proventus aetate.

Lately, nuper. But lately, paulo antea (antehac).

Latter, hic (as opposed to ille, the former).

Laugh, rideo. Laugh at, irrideo (dat.).

Launch, deduco. To launch against (aim or hurl), inmitto in (acc.).

Law, lex, ius; (divine law) fas. The law of nations, ius gentium; to propose a law, legem fero; to pass a law, legem iubeo; to obey the law, legibus pareo.

Lawful, legitimus. It is lawful, licet, fas est.

Lawyer, iuris-consultus.

Lay, pono. Lay down, depono; (of laws) iura do; lay bare, nudo; lay waste, vasto, populo; lay up, repono, condo; lay down arms (disband or surrender), ab armis discedo; to lay violent hands on oneself (commit suicide), vim mihi infero, mortem mihi conscisco.

Lazy, ignavus.

Lead, duco. Lead across or through, traduco; lead back, reduco; lead aside, deduco; lead out, educo; lead round, circumduco.

I have led an unhappy life, vitam miseram vixi.

Leader, dux.

Leadership. Under my leadership, me duce; under the leadership of Balbus, Balbo duce.

Leaf, frons.

Lean (adj.), macer; (verb), nitor.

Leap, salio (and compounds).

Learn, disco; (ascertain) cognosco, comperio.

Learned, doctus.

Learning, doctrina.

Least, minimus. Not in the least, minime, non omnino; at least, certe, saltem.

Leave, (leave behind), linquo, relinquo; leave alone, neglego; leave out, omitto; leave a place, excedo (ex); leave one's post, loco cedo; (bequeath) lego; leave in the lurch, destituo; leave nothing undone to . . . , nil praetermitto quin . . . ; with your leave, pace tua.

Left, (abandoned or remaining), relictus, reliquus; to be left (survive), supersum; (left-hand), sinister, laevus.

Leg, crus.

Legion, legio.

Legionary, (regular soldier), legionarius (miles).

Leisure, otium. At leisure (adj.), otiosus.

To have leisure for, vaco (dat.).

Lend, mando, utendum do.

Length, longitudo (or use adj. longus). At length, tandem.

Less (adj.), minor; (adv.), minus. None the less, nihilominus, tamen.

Lessen, deminuo.

Let, (allow) sino (acc. and inf.); permitto (dat. and ut); patior (acc. and inf.).

Let down, demitto; let go, dimitto, omitto.

Let me know what you are doing, certiore me fac quid agas.

Letter, epistula, litterae; (of the alphabet), littera.

Level, aequus, planus.

Levy, delectus. To hold a levy, delectum habeo.

Liable to, obnoxius, pronus.

Liar, mendax (adj.).

Liberate, libero.

Liberty, libertas.

Lie, (tell lies) mentior; (lie down) iaceo, procumbo, occumbo; lie out on guard, excubo. (noun), mendacium.

Lieutenant, legatus.

Life, vita. In my father's lifetime,
patre meo vivo.

Lifeless, exanimis, exanimus.

Lift, tollō.

Light (noun), lux, lumen.
(adj.), levis.

Lightly, leviter.

Lightning, fulgur, fulmen.

Like, similis; just like, consimilis.

Like (verb), amo.

Likely to . . ., turn by fut. part.;
likely to die, moriturus.

Limb, membrum; artus (mostly in
plur.).

Limit, modus.

Line (of battle), acies. Line of
march (column), agmen; lines of
fortification, munitiones, muni-
menta.

Linger, moror, cunctor; tempus
tero.

Lion, leo.

Lioness, leaena.

Lip, labrum.

Listen to, audio; (heed, obey)
obtempero, pareo (dat.).

Literature, litterae.

Little, parvus, exiguus. A little,
paulum; by a little, paulo; too
little, parum; little by little,
paulatim; for a little while,
paulisper.

Live, vivo; (inhabit) incolo, habito;
pass time, aetatem or vitam
ago.

Liver, iecur.

Lo! en, ecce.

Load (noun), onus; (verb), onero.

Lofty, praealtus, excelsus.

Long (adj.), (of distance) longus;
of time) diutinus.

(adv.), diu, iam diu; long ago,
iampridem; as long as, donec,
quoad; (provided that) dum,
dummodo.

Look, aspicio, specto, tueor. Look
up, suspicio; look closely at,
intueor; look for (wait for),
exspecto; look down on, de-
spicio; look round (for), cir-
cumspicio; look forward to,
provideo (acc.); look for in vain,
desidero.

Loose (adj.), latus; (verb), solvo.

Lose, amitto; (wilfully) perdo; lose
an opportunity, occasione de-

Lose, cont.

sum; lose heart, animo deficio;
lose time, tempus tero; lose
the day, vincor.

All is lost, de summa re actum
est: (actum est de . . ., it is all
over with . . .).

Loss, damnum, detrimentum. Be
at a loss, dubito.

With great loss, maxima strage,
or amissis plurimis.

Lot, sors; (lot in life), fortuna. It
falls to my lot, mihi contingit.

Loudly, magna voce.

Love (verb), amo, diligo; (amo, to
love dearly or passionately, is
a stronger word than diligo).

(noun) amor; (the god of love)
Amor, Cupido.

Lovely, amoenus, pulcherrimus.

Lover, amator, amans.

Low (verb), mugio.

(adj.) humilis, abiectus. Very low,
infirmus.

The lowest part of, imus.

Of low birth, ignobilis, humili
loco natus.

Lower, demitto.

Lowing, mugitus.

Loyal, fidelis.

Loyalty, fides, fidelitas.

Lust, libido, cupiditas.

Luxury, luxus, luxuria.

Lying, see false.

M

Mad, insanus, demens, amens. To
be mad (out of one's mind),
insanio; to be raving mad,
furo.

Madden, in furorem impello.

Madness, insania, dementia, furor.
He came to such a pitch of
madness, eo dementiae venit.

Magistrate, magistratus.

Magnificent, praeclarus (or super-
lative).

Maid, puella, virgo.

Maid servant, ancilla; ministra,
famula.

Maimed, saucius.

Main, princeps. Main road, via.

Mainly, plerumque, imprimis, potis-
simum.

Maintain, sustineo; (assert) vindico.

Majority, maior pars; plerique
(adj.).

Make, facio, creo, construo. Make one's way, iter facio; make war on, bellum infero (dat.); make for, peto, contendo ad, procedo ad; make trial of, experior; make a stand, resisto; make a speech, orationem habeo; make up one's mind (resolve), statuo, constituo; make peace with, pacem in eo cum; make up (invent), fingo; make fast, constringo, vincio.

Malice, malevolentia.

Man, (human being) homo; (male) vir; mankind, homines, genus humanum; to a man, ad unum; like a man, pro virili parte.

(verb), compleo.

Manage, administro, gero; (bring it about that), efficio ut.

Manhood. In early manhood, admodum adolescens; to grow to manhood, adoleasco.

Manner, modus, ratio. In this manner, hoc modo, in hunc modum, hac ratione.

I knew not what manner of man he was, nesciebam qualis esset.

Manners, mores (plur.).

Many, multi (plur.). How many, quot (indecl. adj.); many times (greater, &c.), multis partibus.

Marble, marmor; (adj.), marmoreus.

March (noun), iter. A forced march, magnum iter; on the march, in or ex itinere.

(verb), iter facio, contendo.

Mark (noun), nota.

(verb), noto, designo.

Marked, insignis.

Marriage, coniugium, matrimonium.

Marry, (of the woman) nubo (dat.); (of the man) duco, in matrimonium duco.

Marsh, palus.

Mass, moles. The masses (of the people), vulgus.

Massacre (noun), caedes, strages. (verb), trucido, occido.

Mast, malus.

Master, dominus; (of pupils) magister; master of the horse, equitum magister.

Match, (a match for) par (dat.).

Matter, res.

Matters, It, interest, refert. It matters much, multum or magni interest; it matters little, parvi refert; it matters not, nil refert.

Meadow, pratum.

Mean (adj.), sordidus; (or see low). (verb), volo dicere; what does he mean? quid sibi vult?

Means, (way, manner), modus. Humble means, tenuis fortuna; by this means, ita; by no means, haudquaquam; by any means, quocunque modo.

Meanwhile, meantime, interim, interea.

Meet, occurro (dat.), obviam fio or eo (dat.). Meet together, convenio; to meet death, mortem obo.

Meeting, concilium, conventus, congressus; (public assembly) contio; comitia (plur.).

Memorial, monumentum.

Memory, memoria; within the memory of man, post hominum memoriam.

Mention, commemoro. Not to mention . . . , ne dicam . . .

Mercenary, (miles) mercede conductus. Mercenaries, mercenarii.

Merchandise, merx (or plur.).

Merchant, mercator. Merchant ship, navis oneraria.

Merciful, clemens.

Mercy, misericordia. I throw myself on your mercy, totum me tibi trado.

To pray for mercy, veniam peto.

Mere, merely, often expressed by ipse; or by emphatic order.

Merit, virtus.

Message, nuntius (nuntium is rare).

Messenger, nuntius.

Metal, metallum.

Method, ratio, modus.

Middle, midst, medius. Middy, meridies.

Might, vis. With all one's might, summa vi, pro vilibro, pro virili parte.

Mile, mille passus. Miles, milia passuum.

Mind, (as seat of the emotions) animus; (intellect or imagination) mens.

To change one's mind, sententiam mutare.

Mind, cont.

To be of the same mind, in eadem sententia maneo.

To be of one mind with, consentio; to be out of one's mind, insanio.

(verb), Mind you come, cura ut (or fac) venias.

He minds his own business, suas res agit.

Mindful, memor.

Mines, metalla (plur.).

Mingle, immisceo; (intrans.) immisceor, me immisceo.

Miracle, miraculum, prodigium.

Mischief, damnum, detrimentum.

Miser, avarus.

Miserable, miser.

Misfortune, calamitas, malum, adversa fortuna, res adversae.

Mislead, decipio.

Mismanage, male gero.

Missile, telum.

Mistake, error, erratum. To make a mistake, erro.

Mix, see mingle.

Mob, turba, multitudo; vulgus.

Mock, irrideo.

Mode, modus, ratio.

Moderate, (not too much) modicus; ('middling') mediocris.

Modern. In modern times, nostra memoria, his temporibus.

Modest, pudens, modestus.

Moment, use tempus. For a moment, paulisper.

Money, pecunia, argentum.

Monster, monstrum.

Monstrous (wicked), nefarius.

Month, mensis.

Moon, luna.

Morals, mores.

More, (quantity) plus, amplius; (rather) magis. To say more, plura dicere; the more . . . the more . . . , quo plus . . . eo plus . . .

Moreover, praeterea.

Morning, in the, mane (adv.).

Morrow, (of future) dies crastinus; (day following) dies posterus.

Mortal, (liable to death) mortalis; (causing death) mortifer; mortals, homines, mortales.

Most (men), plerique.

Mother, mater.

Motion, motus.

Motionless, immotus.

Motive, causa. With this motive, idcirco, hanc ob causam, eo consilio (ut).

Mound, agger, tumulus.

Mount, ascendo.

Mountain, mons.

Mounted, equo vectus.

Mourn, maereo.

Mournful, maestus.

Mouse, mus.

Mouth, os; (of river), ostium. This is in every one's mouth, hoc est omnibus in ore.

Move (trans.), moveo; (affect) commoveo; (intrans.), moveor.

Mow, meto.

Much, multus; (subst. with participative gen.), multum; (with comparatives), by much, multo; just as much as, aequè ac; much less, nedum, ne dicam; too much (adj.), nimius; (subst.) nimium; (adv.) nimis.

Multitude, multitudo; (common people) plebs.

Murder (noun), caedes; after the murder of Caesar, occiso Caesare. (verb), trucido, neco, caedo.

Murderer, homicida, sicarius.

Must, one, oportet, opus est; or use gerundive.

Mutiny, seditio.

Mutual, mutuus.

My, meus.

Myself, ipse, ego, ego equidem.

N

Nail, clavus. Finger-nail, unguis.

Naked, nudus.

Name (noun), nomen. By name, nomine; in name (nominally), nomine; good name, fama.

(verb), nomino, appello.

Narrow, angustus, artus.

Nation, populus, civitas (sometimes cives), respublica; (race, people) gens; (tribe, generally of barbarous tribes) natio.

National, communis; (or gen. of respublica).

Native, indigena; native land, patria.

Nature, natura; (personal character) indoles, ingenium. What is the nature of the island? Qualis est insula?

Naval, navalis.

Nay rather, immo, immo vero.

Near (prep.), prope.
 (adj.), vicinus, proximus.
 (adv.), prope, iuxta. To be near, adsum.

Nearly, prope, paene. (See almost.)

Necessary, necessarius. Necessaries, necessaria, quae opus sunt.
 It is necessary for me to go, necesse est eam (or, me ire).

Necessity, necessitas; (emergency) tempus, discrimen; of necessity, necessario.

Neck, collum, cervix.

Need (noun), opus (abl.). I have need of money, opus est mihi pecunia.
 (verb), egeo, indigeo (abl. or gen.); be without, careo.

Needy, egens, pauper.

Neglect, neglego.

Negligence, neglegentia, indiligentia.

Negligent, neglegens.

Negotiate, res ago cum.

Neighbour (neighbouring), vicinus, finitimus; (fellow man) alter, ceteri; love thy neighbour as thyself, ceteros ama ut teipsum.

Neither (of two), neuter; neither ... nor, neque ... neque.

Never, nunquam. And never, nec unquam.

Nevertheless, tamen, nihilominus.

New, novus, recens. Something new, aliquid novi.

News, nuntius (or use verb). News was brought, nuntiatum est.

Next, proximus insequens. Next day, dies posterus; on the next day, postridie.

Next to (prep.), iuxta.

Night, nox. By night, noctu; late at night, multa nocte; until late at night, ad multam noctem.

No (neg. reply to question), minime, nequaquam, minime ego quidem (&c.); I answer No, nego.
 (none, adj.), nullus; nobody, nemo; and nobody, nec quisquam.
 Nowhere, nusquam; nohow, nullo modo; no more than, nihilo magis quam.

Noble, nobilis, generosus; (morally) praeclarus, pulcherrimus; nobles (the aristocracy), optimates.

Noon, noonday, meridies.

Nor, neque, nec; (in final clauses) neve, neu.

North, septentriones (plur.). North wind, Aquilo.

Not, non, haud, (in prohibitions) ne. Not yet, nondum.

Nothing, nihil, nil.

Notice, animadverto.

Nourish, alo.

Now, (by this time, already) iam; (at the present time) nunc; nowadays, his temporibus.
 (conjunction, continuing narrative), autem.

Nuisance, use molestus.

Number, numerus (only sing.). A great number, multitudo; in great numbers, frequentes.

Numerous, multi, frequentes, crebri. More numerous, plures.

Nurse, nutrix.

Nymph, nympa.

O

Oak, quercus; (timber) robur; holm-oak, ilex.

Oar, remus.

Oath, iusiurandum; (military oath) sacramentum.

Obey, pareo (dat.), obtempero (dat.), oboedio (dat.).

Object (noun), consilium; I make it my object to ..., id ago ut ...; he is an object of hatred, odio est.
 (verb), recuso (quin).

Obligation, to be under, gratiam debeo.

Oblige, see compel.

Obscure person, nescio quis.

Observe, (notice) animadverto; (keep) colo.

Obstacle, impedimentum, difficultas; id quod obstat.

Obstinacy, pertinacia.

Obstinate, pertinax.

Obtain, nanciscor; (after an effort) adipiscor, consequor; (by entreaty) impetro.

Obvious, obviously, often turned by manifestum.

Occasion, on that, tum. On many occasions, saepe.

Occupy, teneo, occupo.

Occurs, it, accidit, contingit, evenit; (to the mind) in mentem venit (dat.).

O'clock, What o'clock is it? *quota est hora?*

Off, To be a long way off, *longe (procul) absum*; (nautical term, opposite) *contra*.

Offence, *delictum, peccatum, noxa*.

Offend, *offendo*; *displiceo (dat.)*.

Offer, *offero, praebeo*; (terms) *fero*.
Offer battle, *pugnandi copiam*
facio; offer a reward, *praemium*
propono.

Office (public), *honor, magistratus*.
To hold office, *honorem (magistratum) habeo, obtineo*.

Officers, *praefecti*; (of an army)
tribuni militum, centuriones.

Often, *saepe*. So often, *totiens*;
as often as, *quotiens*.

Oil, *oleum*.

Old, see **ancient**. Old man, *senex*;
getting on in years, *senior, pro-*
vectus aetate; older, *natu*
maior; ten years old, *decem an-*
nos natus; old times, *antiquitas*.

Olive, *olea*.

On, in (abl.). On account of, *ob*,
propter (acc.); on this side of,
cis, citra (acc.).

Once (as opp. to twice), *semel*; once
or twice, *semel atque iterum*;
more than once, *semel ac*
saepius; (formerly) *olim, quon-*
dam; at once (immediately),
statim; (at the same time)
simul; (all together) *una*.

One, *unus*. A certain one, *qui-*
dam; one by one, *singuli*; one
in ten, *decimus quisque*; one
... another (of several), *alius ...*
alius; (of two) *alter ... alter*.

On one side ... on the other,
ab altera parte ... ab altera.

They love one another, *inter se*
amant (or amant alius alium).

Only, *solum, modo, tantum*. Not
only, *non solum, non modo*.

Onset, *impetus*.

Open (adj.), *apertus, patens*. It is
open to question, *dubitari potest*.
(verb), *aperio, pando, recludo*.
Cause to be opened, *patefacio*;
to be open, *pateo*.

Openly, *palam, aperte*.

Opinion, *sententia, opinio*. Good
opinion, *existimatio*; in my
opinion, *me iudice*; to give an
opinion, *sententiam fero*.

Opponent, *adversarius*.

Opportunity, *facultas, locus, occasio*.

To get an opportunity, *occa-*
sionem nanciscor; to give an
opportunity, *occasionem do*,
facio; to lose an opportunity,
occasionem amitto.

Oppose (intrans.), *adversor (dat.)*,
obsto (dat.), *resisto (dat.)*;
(trans.), *oppono, obicio*.

Opposite (adj.), *adversus, contrarius*,
adversarius (sometimes *alter*).
(adv.), *contra, e regione (gen.)*

Oppress, *vexo, opprimo*.

Or, aut, vel (aut marks a sharp
distinction, vel an unimportant
difference); (in alternative
questions) *an*.

Oracle, *oraculum, sors*.

Oration, *oratio*.

Orator, *orator*.

Ordain, *edico* (or see **decree**).

Order (noun), (discipline) *disciplina*;
to lose order, *disciplinam omitto*;
(array) *ordo*; in close order,
confertus, conferto agmine;
(command) *iussum*; by order
of, *iussu*, without the order of,
iniussu.

(verb), see **command**.

Origin, *origo*; (extraction) *genus*.
Of humble origin, *humili loco*
natus.

Orphan, *orbus*.

Other, *alius*; (of two) *alter*. The
others (the rest), *ceteri, reliqui*;
belonging to others, *alienus*;
otherwise, *aliter, secus (ac or*
quam).

Ought, *debeo*; (me) *oportet*.

Our, *noster*.

Out of, *e, ex*.

Outpost, *statio*.

Outside, *extra*.

Over (prep.), *super, supra*; (more
than) *plus*. It is all over with
us, *actum est de nobis*.

Overcome, *super, vinco*. Over-
come with fear, *metu percussus*.

Overtake, *adsequor, consequor*.

Overthrow, *sterno, prosterno*.

Overwhelm, *obruo, opprimo*.

Owe, *debeo*.

Owing to, *propter, ob*. It was owing
to you that ... , *per te tetit*.

Own (his), *suus*. My own, *meus*.

Ox, *bos*.

P

Pace, passus.
Pacify, paco, placo.
Pain, dolor, angor; (of trouble) cura, sollicitudo. To take pains, operam do, in eo laboro ut.
Palace, (domus) regia.
Panic, pavor; panic-stricken, metu percussus.
Pardon (noun), venia.
 (verb), ignosco, veniam do (dat.).
Parent, parens.
Park (pleasure grounds), horti.
Part, pars. To take part in, intersum; I for my part, (ego) equidem; it is the part of a wise man, sapientis est; to take the part of a friend, ab amico sto, amico adsum.
Particularly, praeter omnes.
Partly, partim.
Party (body of soldiers, &c), manus; political parties, partes; the aristocratic party, optimates; the popular party, populares; party feeling, studia partium.
Pass (noun), saltus, angustiae.
 (verb), (pass by) praetereo; (pass over) praetermitto, omitto; pass a law, legem fero (perfero); pass time (vitam, tempus) ago, dego; (intrans., of an interval) intercedo.
Passage, (crossing) transitus; (of a book) locus.
Passion, cupiditas, libido, studium; to be in a passion, irascor.
Past, praeteritus. The past, praeterita (n. plur.), tempus praeteritum, res praeteritae.
Path, trames, via.
Pathless, invius.
Patience, patientia. With patience, patiently, aequo animo, patienter.
Patriot, civis bonus (optimus). All true patriots, optimus quisque.
Patron, patronus.
Pay (noun), stipendium.
 (verb), solvo, pendo. Pay the penalty, poenam do; pay attention to, operam do; pay respects to, saluto; pay honour to, honorem habeo alicui.
Peace, pax, otium. Peace of mind, securitas.
Peaceful, tranquillus, placidus, quietus.

Peasant, agricola, rusticus.
Peculiar, proprius.
Pen, calamus, stylus.
Penalty, poena. Pay the penalty, poenam (poenas) do; undergo a penalty, poenam subeo; inflict a penalty on any one, poenas de aliquo capio.
People (men), homines. A people (nation), populus; the common people, plebs, vulgus; people say (Fr. 'on dit'), ferunt, dicunt, tradunt.
Perceive, sentio, intellego.
Perform, facio, efficio, perficio; fungor (abl.).
Perhaps, forsitan (subj.), fortasse (indic.); nescio an, haud scio an (subj.).
Peril, periculum.
Perilous, periculosus.
Period, tempus. Period of three years, triennium; of five years, quinquennium.
Perish, pereo, intereo; (of a ship) frangor.
Perjury, periurium.
Permission, With your permission, pace tua; by your kind permission, bona tua venia; without Caesar's permission, iniussu Caesaris.
Permit, see allow.
Perpetrate, admitto, committo.
Perpetual, sempiternus, aeternus.
Persecute, insector.
Perseverance, constantia.
Persevere, persist, persevero, persto.
Person, homo, vir. A certain person, quidam; some person, nescio quis; the king in person exhorted the soldiers, Rex ipse milites hortatus.
Personal appearance, corporis habitus.
Persuade, persuadeo, hortor.
Pestilence, pestis, pestilentia.
Petition, preces (plur.).
Philosopher, sapiens, philosophus.
Philosophy, philosophia, sapientia.
Phrase, verbum (or verba).
Pick (choose, select), deligo.
Picture, pictura, tabula.
Pierce, transfigo, confodio.
Piety, pietas.
Pig, porcus.
Pile up, coacervo; congero.

Pirate, praedo.

Pitch (noun), pix. He came to such a pitch of folly, eo stultitiae venit.

(verb), Pitch a camp, castra pono.

Pity (noun), misericordia.

(verb), misereor, miseror, me miseret.

Place (noun), locus. First place, principatus; place in ranks, ordo; to take the place of, succedo (dat.).

(verb), pono. Place before, antepono; place after, posthabeo, postpono; place on, impono.

Plague, pestilentia, pestis.

Plain (noun), campus, planities.

(adj.), manifestus. To make plain, patefacio, inlustro.

Plainly, aperte, plane.

Plaintiff, petitor, actor.

Plan, consilium. To form a plan, consilium capio or ineo.

Play, ludo.

Plead (as an excuse), excuso. Plead a cause, causam oro, dico; (negotiate) ago.

Pleasant, iucundus, amoenus.

Please, placeo (dat.), delecto. It pleases, iuvat, libet, placet.

Pleasing, gratus, acceptus.

Pleasure, voluptas.

Pledge oneself, spondeo.

Plot (noun), coniuratio.

(verb), consilium ineo, capio; coniuro.

Plough (noun), aratrum; (verb) aro.

Plunder (noun), praeda.

(verb), spolio, vasto, diripio, populor.

Plunge (trans.), immitto, immergo.

Poet, poeta.

Point, apex; (of sword) mucro.

In point of, in (with abl.); in all points, in omnibus rebus; at every point, ubique; to be on the point of, in eo sum ut (or use fut. part.); at the point of death, moriturus, moribundus.

Point out, monstro, ostendo.

Poison, venenum.

Poisoned, venenatus.

Pole, contus.

Policy, consilia (plur.).

Political, rei publicae. Political life, res publica; to take up politics, enter political life, ad rem p.

Political, cont.

accedo (me confero), rem p. capesso.

Politics, respublica (never plur.).

Ponder, cogito, meditor.

Poor, pauper.

Poppy, papaver.

Popular, populo carus. Popular party, populares.

Popularity (with the masses), favor; (interest with those in power) gratia.

Population, populus.

Populous, frequens.

Portmanteau, mantica.

Position, locus. To take up a position, consido.

Possess, possideo, habeo, est mihi.

Possession, get, potior (abl.).

Possible, it is, fieri potest ut. As soon as possible, quam primum.

Post, to desert, locum desero, loco cedo.

Posterity, posteri.

Postpone, differo.

Pour, fundo (and compounds).

Poverty, paupertas, egestas.

Power (civil), potestas; (military) imperium; (excessive) potentia; (royal) regnum; (influence, often personal) auctoritas; (tyranny) dominatus; (strength) vires; (sway, dominion) dicio, arbitrium.

In the power of, penes.

Powerful, potens. He is most powerful, plurimum potest.

Powerless, am, nihil possum.

Practise, studeo (dat.), exerceo.

Praise (noun), laus; (verb), laudo.

Praiseworthy, laudandus, laudabilis.

Pray, precor, oro. Pray for (desire greatly), opto.

Prayers, preces. To say prayers, vota facio.

Preceding, proximus.

Precept, praeceptum.

Precious, pretiosus.

Precipice, saxa praerupta.

Predict, praedico.

Prefer, malo; (one thing to another) antepono, praepono, praefero.

Prepare, paro; (intrans.), me paro. To prepare for battle, arma expedire: aciem instruere.

Presence of, in the, coram (abl.). In whose presence, quo praesente.

Present, praesens. This present life, haec vita; your present happiness, felicitas ista; at or for the present, in praesens; to be present, adsum; to be present at, intersum.

Present (noun), (gift) donum; munus. As a present, dono, muneri (pred. dat.).

(verb), dono, do, offero, praebere. I present you with this, hoc (abl.) te (acc.) dono.

Presently, mox, brevi.

Preserve, servo, conservo.

Preside over, praesum (dat.), praesideo (dat.).

Press, premo. Be hard pressed, laboro, premor; press on, insto; (urge) incito, hortor, urgeo.

Pretend, simulo, fingo, dictito. He pretends to be mad, simulat se insanum esse.

Pretext, species.

Pretty, pretty well (adv.), satis.

Prevail, valeo, supero; (by entreaty) impetro (ab), (or see persuade).

Prevent, prohibeo, obsto (dat.). In order to prevent being seen, ne videretur.

Previous, prior.

Prey, praeda.

Price, pretium. At a low price, vili, parvo.

Priceless, pretiosissimus.

Pride, superbia, animus.

Priest, priestess, sacerdos.

Prince, princeps, rex, regis filius.

Principal, praecipuus, maximus.

Principles, ea quae sentimus, &c. Lack of principle, levitas.

Prison, carcer, vincula (plur., 'bonds'). To cast into prison, in carcerem (or vincula) conicere or dare.

Prisoner, captivus. To take prisoner, capio, captivum facio.

Private, privatus. Private property, res familiaris, propria bona.

Prize (noun), praemium, merces. (verb), magni aestimo.

Probable, verisimilis.

Proceed, progredior, pergo, procedo.

Procession, agmen.

Proclaim, edico.

Procrastinate, cunctor, differo.

Procure, see get, obtain.

Produce, edo, fero; (exhibit) profero, prae me fero.

Profess, profiteor.

Progress (noun). To make much (more) progress, multum (plus) proficio.

Project, consilium.

Prolong, (a war) duco; (a command) prorogo.

Prolonged, diutinus.

Promise (noun), promissum. To be bound by a promise, promisso teneor; a youth of the highest promise, optimaе spei adolescens.

(verb), polliceor, promitto. To promise faithfully, fidem interpono.

Promontory, promunturium.

Prompt, alacer.

Promptly, statim, confestim, sine mora.

Proof, indicium, documentum. To be a proof, indicio, documento, esse.

Proper, iustus, rectus (sometimes suus).

Property, res, bona (n. plur.); (private) res familiaris; (in land) fundus, praedia (n. plur.).

Prophet, prophetess, vates.

Proportion to, in, pro; ex.

His strength was in proportion to his body, vires pro corpore erant.

The losses were small in proportion to the importance of the victory, caedes minor quam pro tanta victoria.

Your success will as a rule be in proportion to your endurance, ut te patientem laboris praebis, ita ferme rem prospere geres.

Propose (intend), in animo habeo (or use fut. part.). Propose a law, legem fero, propono; legis auctor sum.

Propound, edo, expono.

Proscribe, proscribo.

Prosecuted, to be, accusor, reus fio.

Prospect (hope), spes.

Prosperity, res prosperae, res secundae.

Prosperous, felix.

Protect, *defendo, tueor, tutor*. I protect your interests, *tibi caveo*.

Protection, *praesidium*. To be a protection, *praesidio esse*; to be under Caesar's protection, *fidem Caesaris sequi*.

Protract (a war), *traho, duco*.

Proud, *superbus, arrogans*.

Prove, *demonstro, probō*; (turn out to be) *evenio*.

To prove oneself faithful, *me fidum praebeo*.

Provide, *praebeo, paro*; (a remedy) *adhibeo*. Provide against, *caveo*; provide for, *provideo*.

Provided that, *dum, dummodo, modo, modo ne*.

Province, *provincia*.

Provision (verb), *rem frumentariam expedio*.

(noun), make provision, *provideo, prospicio*. To make no provision, *nil provideo*.

Provisions, *commeatus, cibus, frumentum, res frumentaria*.

Provocation, without, *ultro, nullo lacescente*.

Provoke, *laccio, irrito, incito*.

Prudence, *prudentia*. Lack of prudence, *imprudentia*.

Prudent, *prudens, providens*.

Prudently, *prudenter, providenter, sapienter*.

Public, *publicus*. The public interest, *res publica*; to enter public life, *ad rem publicam me confero*.

Publish, *divulgo, patefacio*.

Punish, *punio*; *poena* or *supplicio* *adficio*; *animadverto* in (acc.); *poenas sumo* de (abl.). To be punished for, *poenas de* (with gen. of crime).

Punishment, *poena, supplicium*.

Purchase, see *buy*.

Pure, *castus, purus*.

Purity, *pudicitia*.

Purpose (noun), *propositum, consilium*. For this purpose, *ad hoc*; on purpose, *consulto, de industria*; for the purpose of, *causa* or *gratia* (abl.) (*after* the genitive); on purpose to, *eo ut, eo consilio ut* (with subj.); to no purpose, *frustra, nequidquam*.

Purse, *crumena*.

Pursue, *sequor, persequor*.

Pursuit (pursuing), use verb *sequor*; (calling, occupation) *studium*.

Push, *trudo, pello*, and compounds.

Put, *pono*. Put on, *induo*; put off (postpone) *differo*; put to death, see *kill*; put up with, *tolero*; put back, *repono*; put out (fire), *exstinguo*; put in command, *praeficio* (dat.); put on trial, *reum facio*; put to flight, *fugo, in fugam verto*; put out to sea, *evehor*; *naves solvo*; in altum *provehor*; put to an bad use, *abutor, male utor*; put an end to, *finem impono* (dat.); put to the test, *periclitor*; put to the rack, *crucio*.

Pyre, *rogus*.

Q

Quail before, *pertimesco* (acc.).

Quality, use *qualis*. Good qualities, *virtutes*.

Quantity, *copia, vis*; or use *quantus*.

Quarrel (noun), *rixa*.

(verb), *rixor, iurgo*.

Quarter, From every quarter, *undique*; at close quarters, *comminus*; to ask for quarter, *veniam rogo, ut parcat mihi precor, victoris iram deprecor*; to obtain quarter, *mihi parcat; impetro ut mihi parcat*.

Quartered, to be, *stationem habeo*.

Queen, *regina*.

Quench, *exstinguo*.

Question (verb), *interrogo*. It is questioned, *dubitatur* (num); may be —, *dubitari potest*.

(noun), (matter) *res*. To my question, *interroganti mihi*; the question is, *id quaeritur*.

Quick, *celer, velox*.

Quickly, *celeriter, velociter, cito*.

Quiet (noun), *quies*.

(adj.), *quietus, tranquillus*.

Quit, *excedo* (or see *leave*). To quit office, *officio functus sum*.

Quite, *admodum* (with negatives often *omnino*). Not quite, *vix, parum*.

Quiver, *pharetra*.

R

Rabble, *turba*.

Race, (birth, origin) *genus, stirps*; (tribe, family) *gens*; the human race, *genus humanum*.

Rage (noun), ira, furor, rabies.

(verb), furo, saevio.

Raid, incursio. Make a raid on, incursionem facio in (acc.).

Raiment, vestis, vestitus.

Rain, pluvia, imber (often in plur.).

Rains, it, pluit.

Raise, tollo. Raise a cheer, clamorem tollo; raise an army, exercitum comparo; raise a siege (retire foiled), obsidionem relinquo or omitto, obsidione desisto; raise a siege (of relieving army), obsidionem libero or solvo.

Rally (intrans.), se colligere, se recipere, concurrere; (trans.), colligo.

Ram, aries.

Rampart, vallum; (of a town), moenia.

Range, Within range (within a spear's throw), intra coniectum teli.

Rank, (position) status, gradus; (of army) ordo; the first rank, prima acies; high rank, dignitas, summus locus.

Ransom (verb), redimo.

Rare, rarus; (remarkable) singularis.

Rarely, raro.

Rash, temerarius, audax, incautus.

Rashly, temere, inconsulte.

Rashness, temeritas.

Rather, potius, magis. (Potius implies preference, Magis, a greater degree, Plus, a greater quantity.) Rather, in sense of somewhat, may often be translated by the comparative, e.g. rather elderly, senior; rather short, brevior.

I would rather (in old English 'I had rather'), malo.

Ravage, popular, vasto.

Rave, furo, insanio.

Reach, attineo; (of letters) perferri ad; (arrive at) pervenio ad. He reached such a pitch of arrogance, eo insolentiae venit (or processit).

Reach (noun). Within reach of a spear, intra teli iactum (or coniectum).

Read, lego. Read through, perlego.

Readily, libenter; (easily) facile.

Reading, lectio.

Ready, promptus; paratus (inf.).

To get ready, paro, comparo; to be ready, volo; (or use fut. part.).

Realize, intellego, animadverto, cognosco.

Really, in reality, re, re ipsa, revera.

Realm, regnum.

Reap, meto. Reap an advantage, or reap the fruit of, fructum percipio (gen.).

Rear, in the, (from the), a tergo; rearguard (rear of the column), novissimum agmen; to attack in the rear, aversos aggredior.

Reason, (cause) causa; (reasoning faculty) ratio; (reasoning powers) mens.

For the reason that, propterea quod.

What reason is there why (why not), quid est causae cur (quin)?

I was ignorant as to his reason for departing, nesciebam cur abiisset.

Reasonably, iure, non sine causa.

Rebel (adj.), rebellis (late Latin); seditiosus.

(noun), turn by verb.

(verb), a fide descisco or deficio; contra regem or rem publicam arma sumo.

Rebellion, (revolt) defectio; (renewal of war after submission) rebellio.

Rebuild, reficio, renovo.

Rebuke, increpo; reprehendo, vituperro.

Recall, revoco. Recall to mind, in animum revoco, repeto, recordor; reminiscor.

Receive, accipio.

Recent, recens.

Reckless, audax.

Recklessly, temere.

Recklessness, temeritas, audacia.

Reckon, (count) numero; (deem) duco.

Recline, accumbo, recumbo.

Recognize, agnosco, cognosco.

Recollect, reminiscor, venit mihi in mentem.

Recollection, memoria.

Reconciled, become, in gratiam redeo (cum aliquo).

Reconsider, mecum reputo.

Recourse, Have recourse to, me confero ad, me recipio ad, descendo ad.

Recover (trans.), recipio, recupero; (intrans.), me recipio, emergo ex; (get well) convalesco.

Recruit, tiro. Army of recruits, exercitus tiro.

Red, ruber.

Redeem, redimo.

Redoubt, castellum.

Reduce, redigo; (to submission) subigo.

Refer (to Senate), refero.

Reflect on, cogito, recordor.

Refrain, abstineo, tempero. I cannot refrain from, temperare mihi non possum (quin).

Refresh, recreo, reficio.

Refuge, seek or fly for, confugio (ad), me recipio (ad).

Refuse, nolo (infin.), recuso (quominus), detrecto (acc.).

Refute, (an opponent) redarguo; (an accusation) diluo, me libero.

Regard (noun), ratio, cura. With regard to, quod attinet ad; have regard for, rationem habeo (gen.); win the regard of, mihi concilio.

(verb), duco, habeo pro. To regard as a friend, in amicorum numero habeo.

Regiment, use cohors.

Region, regio.

Regret (noun), desiderium.

(verb), desidero; deploro; (be sorry for) me pudet, me paenitet (gen.).

Reign, regno.

Reinforcements, novae copiae, subsidia (plur.), supplementum (sing.).

Reject, repudio, reicio, repello, respuo.

Rejoice, gaudeo, laetor.

Rejoicing (noun), gaudium, laetitia. Amid universal rejoicing, omnibus laetantibus.

Relate, narro, refero, commemoro. Relating to (concerning), quod spectat ad (attinet ad).

Relation, propinquus, cognatus, affinis, necessarius.

Relax, remitto.

Reliance, fides.

Relief, auxilium. Come to the relief of, succurro (dat.), subvenio (dat.).

Relieve, sublevo; relieve of, levo (abl. of thing); (take the place of) succedo (dat.); (succour) succurro (dat.), subvenio (dat.); relieve a town from siege, urbis obsidionem libero or solvo.

Religion, religio; pietas.

Religious rites, sacra (plur.).

Relinquish, omitto.

Reluctant, am, nolo.

Reluctantly, invitus.

Rely on, fido or confido (dat.); fidem habeo (dat.).

Relying on, fretus (abl.).

Remain, maneo, resto; it remains to, restat ut; reliquum est.

Remainder, reliqui, quod reliquum est.

Remaining, reliquus.

Remark, verbum, vox.

Remarkable, singularis, insignis, praeclarus.

Remedy, remedium, medicina.

Remember, memini, recordor, reminiscor (gen. or acc.); memor sum.

Remembrance, memoria.

Remind, admoneo, revoco (alicui) in mentem.

Remorse, to feel, paenitet.

Remote, longinquus.

Remove, transfero; (take away) adimo; (one's home) commigro. He is far removed from the baseness of these men, ab horum turpitudine abhorret.

Renew, renovo, redintegro, restituo.

Renown, gloria, laus.

Renowned, praeclarus.

Repair, (restore) reficio, redintegro, reparo; (betake oneself) me recipio or confero ad.

Repay, reddo; (money) exsolvo; (a kindness) gratiam refero (dat. of person, gen. of cause).

Repeal (a law), abrogo.

Repeat, recito.

Repel, repello, repulso, propulso.

Repent, paenitet. I repent of my folly, imprudentiae me paenitet.

Replace, repono.

Reply (noun), responsum. (verb), respondeo.

Report (noun), fama, rumor.

(verb), nuntio, refero; it is reported, fertur, traditur.

Repose (noun), otium, quies.

(verb), quiesco, otiosus sum.

Repress, reprimo, cohibeo.

Reproach, increpo, reprehendo; vitio (or culpa) verito (or do), (dat. of person).

He reproaches me with this, hoc mihi vitio dat, hoc mihi obicit.

It is a reproach to you, est tibi opprobrio.

Reprove, reprehendo, castigo, ob-
iurgo.

Republic, respublica.

Reputation, fama, existimatio, laus.

Request, peto, posco, postulo (ali-
quid ab aliquo); see demand.

To obtain a request, impetro.

Require, egeo (abl.); opus est mihi
(abl.).

Rescue, eripio, libero. To go to the
rescue, succurro (dat.), subvenio
(dat.).

Resemblance, similitudo.

Resemble, similis sum.

Resentment, dolor, indignatio; in-
vidia.

Reserves, subsidia.

Resign, abdicco, depono. The con-
suls resign their office, consules
magistratu se abdicant (or magi-
stratum deponunt).

Resignation, with, aequo animo.

Resist, resisto, obsto, repugno (all
with dat.).

Resistance, use verb.

Resolutely, constanter, obstinate.

Resolution, sententia; (design) con-
siliium; (courage) fortitudo, con-
stantia. To pass a resolution,
decerno.

Resolve, statuo, constituo, decerno.

He resolved to go, constituit ire;
he resolved that his son should
go, constituit ut filius iret. It is
resolved, placet, videtur.

Resource, auxilium, subsidium.

Resources, opes.

Respect (noun), observantia, re-
verentia.

(verb), colo, observo, vereor.

Respectable, honestus.

Responsible for, auctor (gen.); to
be responsible for, rationem
reddo.

Rest (noun), otium, quies. The
rest, ceteri, reliqui.

(verb), quiesco; recumbo. To
rest on, nitior; this rests with
you, hoc penes te est.

Restless, inquietus.

Restore (give back), reddo; (repair)
reficio, redintegro, reparo.

Restrain, tempero (dat.), coerceo,
reprimo, retineo.

Result, eventus; (of labour) fruc-
tus. The result is that, ex quo
evenit (or factum est) ut.

Results, it, evenit (ut).

Retain, retineo.

Retake, recipio.

Retire, abeo, recedo, decedo; (of
troops) me recipio, pedem refero.

Retreat, me recipio, pedem refero,
signa refero. To sound a re-
treat, receptui cano.

Return (noun), reditus; in return
for, pro.

(verb), (go back) redeo; regre-
dior; (give back) reddo; to
return a kindness, gratiam re-
fero, habeo, reddo; to return
thanks, gratias ago.

Reveal, patefacio, inlustro.

Revenge, poena, ultio; or use verb
ulciscor.

Reversal, mutatio (or use verb
muto or commuto).

Review (an army), recenseo.

Revolt (noun), defectio.

(verb), deficio (ab).

Revolution, res novae.

Reward (noun), praemium; pre-
tium, merces.

(verb), praemiis adficio.

Rib, costa.

Rich, dives, opulentus, locuples.

Riches, divitiae, opes.

Ride (on horseback), equo vehor.

Ride past, praetervehor; (ride
at anchor), in ancoris sto.

Ridge, iugum.

Ridicule (verb), irrideo.

Ridiculous, ridiculus, quod risum
movet.

Right (noun), ius; fas. (Ius means
right in the eyes of the law;
fas is right in the eyes of heaven,
morally right).

(adj.), iustus, aequus; right hand,
dextra; on the right, dextra
(abl.). You are right in your

Right (adj.) *cont.*

views, recte sentis; you had no right to do so, hoc facere non debuisti (non te oportuit).

Rightly, (correctly, accurately) recte; (rightfully, deservedly) iure; (in accordance with religious usage) rite.

Ring, anulus.

Riot, tumultus.

Ripe, maturus.

Ripen, maturesco.

Rise, surgo (and compounds); orior, coorior.

Rising, (mob, rebellion), tumultus, seditio. Rising ground, locus editus, tumulus (often in pl.).

Risk (noun), periculum, discrimen. (verb), periclitor, in discrimen adduco.

Run a risk, periculum subeo; to risk all, rem in summum discrimen adduco.

Rival (noun and adj.), aemulus. (verb), aemulor.

River, flumen, fluvius. Up the river, adverso flumine; down —, secundo flumine.

Road, via; (route) iter. To make a road, viam munio.

Roam, see wander.

Roar (verb), fremo, strepo, crepo; (of persons) vociferor, magna voce conclamo. (noun), fremitus.

Roast, torreo.

Rob, spolio.

Robber, latro, praedo.

Robe, vestis.

Rock, saxum, rupes; scopulus (used by Cicero only in metaphors).

Rod, virga; flagellum.

Roll (trans.), volvo; (intrans.), volvor.

Roof, tectum.

Rough, asper.

Round (prep.), circum, circa. (adj.), rotundus.

Rouse, excito; rouse to wrath, ira incendo.

Rout (noun), fuga. To put to rout, in fugam verto.

(verb), fugo, fundo; pello. Rout utterly, profligo.

Route, iter, via.

Row, ordo.

Royal, regius.

Ruin, interitus, pernicies, exitium, clades, calamitas.

(verb), pessum do (or see **destroy**). Ruined, adfectus.

Rule, imperium, dicio.

(verb), rego, dominor (dat.), regno.

Ruler, princeps, dominus, magistratus.

Rumour, fama, rumor.

Run, curro. Run down, decurro; run through or over, percurro; run into, incurro; run about, discuro; run away, aufugio; run a risk, see **risk**; run short, deficio.

Rural, rustic, rusticus, agrestis.

Rush (noun), impetus; rushes (reeds), iunci, arundines.

(verb), ruo, impetum facio. Rush into, irruo; rush out, erumpo, eruo; rush forward, proruo.

S

Sack (a city), diripio.

Sacred, sacer, sanctus.

Sacrifice, (lit.) sacrificium; (met.) iactura.

(verb), macto, sacra facio; (metaph.) iacturam facio, posthabeo.

Sacrilegious, sacrilegus.

Sad, tristis, maestus.

Safe, tutus, incolumis; salvus (of things or persons).

Safely, gen. turned by adj. He returned safely, incolumis rediit.

Safety, salus. In safety, tuto (adv.), or use adj.

Sail (noun), velum. To set sail, vela do, navem solvo.

(verb), navigo. Sail round, circumnavigo; sail across, transvehor; sail along or past, praetervehor; sail along a coast, oram lego.

Sailor, nauta.

Sake, for the sake of, causa or gratia (following a genitive); pro; for its own sake, propter se.

Sally, sortie, eruptio.

Salt, sal; (adj.), salsus.

Salute, saluto.

Salvation, salus. This is my salvation, hoc mihi est saluti.

- Same**, idem. To the same place, eodem; at the same time, simul; this is the same as that, hoc est idem atque illud.
- Sand**, harena.
- Sappers' huts**, vineae.
- Satisfaction, to demand**, res repeto.
- Satisfactory**, idoneus, aptus; or use ex sententia (in accord with one's views).
- Satisfy**, satisfacio (dat.); (indulge) indulgeo (dat.); satisfied with, contentus (abl.).
- Savage**, ferus, saevus.
- Save**, servo, conservo; salutem adfero (dat.).
- Say**, dico, aio; with Or. Recta (says he, said he), inquit; it is said, men say, ferunt; as they say, ut aiunt, quod aiunt; to say no (or not), nego.
- Saying**, dictum.
- Scale**, (climb) ascendo.
- Scanty**, exiguus, exilis.
- Scar**, cicatrix.
- Scarcely**, vix, aegre.
- Scatter** (trans.), dissipo; (sprinkle) dispergo; (intrans.) passives of same.
- Scheme** (method, system), ratio; (plan) consilium; schemes, consilia, insidiae, artes.
- Scholar**, discipulus.
- School**, ludus.
- Schoolmaster**, magister.
- Science**, scientia; science of war, ars militaris.
- Scorn**, contemptus, contemptus. (verb), see despise.
- Scorpion**, scorpio.
- Scout**, explorator, speculator.
- Seruple** (verb), haesito.
- Seruples** (religious), religio.
- Sea**, mare; pelagus. By land and sea, terra marique; to put out to sea, in altum provehor, evehor.
- Sea-coast, ora maritima.
- Search for**, quaero, peto.
- Seat**, sedes, sedile, sella. Seat of war, belli sedes.
- Secession**, secessio.
- Second**, secundus, alter. A second time, iterum; secondly, deinde.
- Secret** (adj.), arcanus; occultus.
- Secretly**, clam, occulte.
- Secure**, see safe.
- See**, (in literal sense) video, aspicio, conspicio; (perceive, understand) intellego, sentio, video; (notice) animadverto; (take care, see to) curo; see that you keep well, cura ut valeas; see that you are not caught, cave ne capiaris.
- Seek for**, peto, quaero. Seek for refuge with, confugio ad.
- Seem**, videor.
- Seize**, rapio (and compounds), comprehendendo, capio, occupo. To seize an opportunity, occasione utor, occasionem capio.
- Seldom**, raro.
- Self**, ipse, se (see chap. XLIII). Self-confidence, sui fiducia; self-control, modestia, temperantia, (animi) moderatio; lacking self-control, impotens.
- Selfish**, to be; sibi solum consulere (to consult only one's own interests).
- Sell**, vendo.
- Senate**, Senatus. Senate-House, Curia.
- Senator**, senator.
- Send**, mitto. Send away, dimitto; send back, remitto, reddo; send in advance, praemitto; send for, arcesso; send to the help of, subsidio mitto (dat.), submitto auxilium (or subsidium) (dat.).
- Sense**, (feeling, perception) sensus; (good sense, common sense) prudentia.
- Sensible**, prudens.
- Sentence**, (punishment) poena.
- Sentiments**, sententia, animus. My sentiments are the same as yours, eadem sentio ac tu.
- Sentinel**, custos, vigil. Sentinels, vigiliae, custodes.
- Separate** (verb), seiungo, distineo, secerno.
- Separately**, (one by one) singuli; viritim.
- Serene**, tranquillus, serenus.
- Serious**, gravis.
- Seriously**, graviter; (in earnest) serio.
- Serpent**, serpens.
- Serve**, servio (dat.), prosum (dat.); (as a soldier) stipendia mereo (or mereo alone).

Service, ministerium, opera; military service, militia; stipendia (plur.). To do good service to, bene mereor de; services to the nation, in rempublicam merita; all these things are at your service, haec omnia penes te sunt; whatever was of service for rebuilding ships, quaecunque usui erant ad naves reficiendas.

Set, (place) pono, loco. Set up, constituo; set forth, set before, propono, expono; set free, set at liberty, libero; set out, proficiscor; set fire to, incendio; set over, praeficio; to be set over, praesum; set sail, navem solvo, ancoram tollo; set at naught, contemno, flocci facio; set in battle array, acie instruo; set about (doing anything), incipio, ago ut.

Settle (trans.), constituo, compono; (intrans.), sideo, consido, incolo.

Settlement, (colony) colonia.

Several, (a number) aliquot; complures; (respective) use suus and quisque. They return to their several tents, ad tabernacula suum quisque redeunt.

Severe, gravis, acerbus.

Severely, graviter, acerbè.

Sew, suo.

Shade, shadow, umbra.

Shady, umbrōsus.

Shake, quatio, concutio, labefacto; (intrans.), tremo; shake off, excutio.

Shallow, brevis.

(noun), vadium.

Shame, pudor.

Shameful, turpis.

Shameless, shamelessness, impudens, impudentia.

Shames, it, pudet.

Shape, forma.

Share, communico; (divide) partior; (take part in) particeps sum.

(noun), pars. Having a share of, particeps; having no share in, expers (gen.).

Shatter, quasso, adfligo.

Shave, tondeo.

Sheath, vagina.

Shed (blood), effundo.

Sheep, ovis.

Shelter (noun), perfugium. (verb), tego.

Shield, scutum, clipeus.

Ship, navis, navigium. Warship, navis longa; merchant ship, transport, navis oneraria.

Shipwreck, naufragium.

Shipwrecked, in litus eiectus. To be shipwrecked, naufragium facio.

Shirk, detrecto, vito.

Shoe, calceus.

Shoot, tela conicio, mitto.

Shop, taberna.

Shore, litus, ora.

Short, brevis; (of stature) humilis, exiguus; to run short, deficio; in short, denique.

Shot, within, intra teli coniectum.

Shoulder, humerus.

Shout (noun), clamor.

(verb), clamo, exclamo.

Show (noun), spectaculum.

(verb), (point out, prove) demonstro; (display) ostendo; (show off) ostento; (show forth, produce) exhibeo; (show qualities) praesto; to show bravery, show oneself brave, virtutem praesto, me fortem praebeo; to show gratitude, gratias habeo.

Shower, imber; (metaph. of missiles, &c.) multitudo, vis.

Shrewd, callidus, vafer, acutus.

Shrine, fanum, adytum.

Shrink from, detrecto (acc.); abhorreo (ab).

Shudder, horresco.

Shun, vito, evito.

Shut, claudio (and compounds).

Sick (ill), aeger; to be sick, aegroto.

Side, latus; (of a river) ripa; on this side of, cis, citra; on the other side of, ultra; on both sides, utrimque; on all sides, undique, passim; on no side, nusquam; on the one side . . . on the other, ab altera parte . . . ab altera; hear the other side (of the matter), audi alteram partem; this is on our side, hoc a nobis stat; you were ever at my side, tu mihi semper praesto eras (or, semper aderas).

Siege, obsidio; to raise a siege, obsidionem relinquo or omitto; obsidione desisto; (of the relieving force) obsidionem libero or solvo.

Sigh, suspiro, gemo; sigh for, desidero.
Sight, aspectus, conspectus. In sight, sub oculis, in conspectu; to catch sight of, conspicio, conspicio.
Sign, signal, signum, signs of office, insignia.
Silence, silentium.
Silent, tacitus, silens. To be silent (make no noise) sileo, (not to speak) taceo; to become silent (cease speaking), conticesco.
Silver, argentum.
Simple, simplex.
Sin (noun), peccatum.
 (verb), pecco.
Since, (causal) quoniam, cum; quippe qui, quod, &c.; (temporal) post, ex, ab, &c.; (adv.), postea; (from the time when) ex quo tempore; since the foundation of the city, ex (ab) urbe condita.
Sing, cano, canto.
Single, unus, solus. Not a single one, ne unus quidem; in single combat, comminus.
Sink (trans.), submergo, demergo; (intrans.), passives of same.
Sister, soror.
Sit, sedeo; sit down, consido.
Situated, situs.
Situation, locus, situs.
Size, magnitudo. To ascertain the size of the island, cognoscere quanta sit insula.
Skill, ars, sollertia; (gained by experience) peritia, usus.
Skilled in, peritus (gen.).
Skin (of man), cutis; (of beast) pellis.
Sky, caelum.
Slackness, inertia.
Slander (noun), maledicta (plur.).
 (verb), maledico (dat.).
Slaughter (noun), caedes.
 (verb), trucidare, occidere.
Slave, servus; (regarded as property) mancipium. To be a slave, servio.
Slavery, servitus.
Slay, see kill.
Sleep (noun), somnus. Want of sleep, vigiliae.
 (verb), dormio.
Slight (adj.), tenuis, parvus, exiguus, exilis.

Slight, cont.
 (verb), asperrnor.
 (noun), contumelia.
Sling, funda.
Slinger, funditor, iaculator.
Slip, labor. Let slip (lose), amitto, omitto.
Slope, clivus, declivitas, fastigium.
Sloping, declivis.
Slow, tardus, lentus, segnis.
Small, parvus, exiguus. So small, tantulus.
Smell (noun), odor; (verb); oleo.
Smile (noun), risus.
 (verb), subrideo.
Smoke, fumus.
Smooth, levis.
Snatch, eripio.
Sneer at, irrideo.
Snow, nix.
So (with adjs. and advs.), tam; (with verbs, = to such an extent) adeo; (in such a way) ita, tali modo; (so much) tantopere, tantum; (accordingly) itaque; so great, tantus; so many, tot; so often, toties; so small, tantulus; so far as, quoad; so far from (this being the case), tantum abest ut (haec ita sint); so far as I am concerned, quod ad me attinet.
Sober, sobrius.
Soft, mollis, lenis.
Soften, mollio, mitigo.
Soil (ground), solum.
Sold, am, veneo.
Soldier, miles; foot-soldier, pedes; horse-soldier, eques; soldier of the line, m. legionarius.
Solid, solidus, firmus.
Some, aliquis, nonnullus, &c. Some (amount of), aliquantum; somewhere, alicubi; somehow, quodam modo, nescio quo pacto; sometimes, interdum, nonnunquam; ('Rarius interdum quam nonnunquam esse memento'); (meaning Now and then, On occasion) aliquando.
Son, filius, natus. Son-in-law, gener.
Song, cantus, carmen.
Soon, mox, brevi (tempore), iam. As soon as, simul atque, cum primum; as soon as possible, quam primum; sooner than was expected, opinione celerius.

Soothsayer, augur, auspex, haruspex.
Sorrow, dolor; sorrows (troubles), incommoda, aerumnae.
Sorry (of regret), use paenitet; (of pity), use miseret. I should be sorry (should not like), nolim.
Soul, anima; not a soul, nemo, ne unus quidem.
Sound, sonus, sonitus.
Sound (verb), to sound a retreat, receptui cano. He sounds your praises, collaudat te; it sounds incredible, incredibile est dictu.
South, meridies; south wind, auster.
Sovereignty, principatus, dicio, imperium.
Sow, sero.
Space, spatium.
Spare, parco (dat.). The children were spared, infantibus temperatum est (the perf. part. of parco is rare).
Sparrow, passer.
Speak, loquor, dico; speak out, eloquor; speak to, colloquor.
Speaker, orator.
Spear, hasta, telum, iaculum.
Speech (language), sermo. A speech, oratio; (to soldiers or a multitude) contio; to make a speech, orationem habeo.
Speed, celeritas, velocitas.
Spend (money), consumo, solvo, expendo; (time) ago, tero, consumo.
Spider, aranea.
Spirit (courage, energy), animus, vigor; (soul, life) anima; spirits of the dead, manes.
Spirited, ferox, acer.
Spite, invidia, malevolentia. In spite of his innocence he was condemned, quanquam innocens damnatus est.
Spiteful, malevolus, malignus.
Splendid, insignis, egregius, splendidus.
Spoil (noun), praeda; spoils, spolia. (verb), (rob) spolio; (damage) corrumpo, perdo, noceo (dat.).
Sport, ludus, iocus. Sports, ludi.
Spot (place), locus. On the spot, statim, confestim.
Spotless, integer, innocens.

Spread (trans.), pando. Spread sails, vela pando; (intrans., = stretch, extend) pateo.
Spring, ver; (of water) fons.
Sprung from, ortus; oriundus (abl.).
Spur, calcar. Put spurs to, calcaria subdo.
Spy, explorator, speculator.
Squadron, ala, turma.
Stab, confodio.
Staff, (stick) baculum; (officers) legati.
Stake, sudes.
Stand, sto. Stand by, adsto; (help) adsum (dat.); stand round, circumsto; stand still, consisto; stand firm, resisto, in loco persto; stand for (be a candidate for), peto; stand in need of, indigeo (gen. or abl.); stand in the way of, obsto (dat.).
Standard, signum, vexillum. To advance standards, signa fero.
Star, stella; (constellation) sidus.
Start, proficiscor.
Starvation, fames, inopia.
Starve, fame pereor.
State, civitas, respublica; (condition) status. In this state of affairs, quae cum ita sint (es-sent).
 (adj.), publicus.
Statesman, use verb (e.g. qui in republica versatur.) A great statesman, rei publicae gubernandae peritissimus.
Statue, simulacrum, signum, statua.
Stature, statura. A man of small stature, homo brevi corpore (parva statura).
Stay, maneo, moror. Stay with (visit), commoror apud, devertor or devertor ad or apud.
Steal, abripio, furor, latrocinator. Steal away (intrans.), dilabor.
Stealthily, furtim, clam.
Steep, arduus, praeruptus.
Step, gradus, passus.
Stern (adj.), severus. (noun), of ship, puppis.
Sternness, severitas.
Stick (noun), baculum. (verb), haereo; stick to, adhaereo.
Still (adv. of time), (of present) adhuc; etiam nunc; (of past or fut.) etiam tum.

Still, cont.

(conj. = nevertheless) tamen, nihilo-
minus ; (= even) vel, etiam ;
with still greater force, vel
maiore vi.

(adj.), tranquillus, quietus.

Sting (provoke), lacezzo, incito.

Stir (trans.), moveo, concito. Stir
up, cito.

Stock, copia.

Stone, lapis ; precious stone, gemma.

Storm (noun), tempestas, procella.
(verb), expugno.

Story, fabula ; to tell a story, narro.

Straight, rectus ; (adv.) directo.
To make straight for, recto
itinere peto.

Strait, fretum.

Straits, (difficulties) angustiae. To
be reduced to great straits, in
summas angustias adducor.

Strange, novus, mirus, mirabilis.

Strangely, nescio quo pacto, miris
modis.

Stranger, hospes, advena, peregrinus.

Stratagem, consilium.

Straw, stramentum, palea.

Street, via, vicus.

Strength, vires (plur.), robur.
Strength of mind, constantia.

Strengthen, confirmo.

Stretch forth (or out), porrigo, ex-
tendo.

Strict, severus ; (earnest) diligens.

Strike, percutio, ferio. Strike off,
excutio ; strike a camp, castra
moveo ; strike fear into, per-
terreo, metum inicio (dat.).

Strive, conor, nitor, certo, contendo.

Stroke (noun), ictus, verber.

(verb), mulceo.

Strong, validus, firmus, fortis.

Stronghold, arx, castellum.

Struck (with a weapon), ictus ;
(with fear) perterritus, metu
perculsus.

Struggle (noun), pugna, contentio ;
without a struggle, nullo re-
pugnante.

(verb), contendo, luctor.

Stubborn, stubbornly, acer, acriter.
The contest was stubborn, acri-
ter pugnatum est.

Study, studeo (dat.), operam do
(dat.). I study your interest,
tibi consulo.

Stumble, prolabor.

Stupefied, obstupefactus.

Subdue, subigo, paco, in potestatem
redigo ; (or see **conquer**).

Subject (adj.), imperio subiectus ;
(liable to) obnoxius.

(noun), civis ; his subjects, sui.

Submit to, patior, perfero.

Subsistence, means of, unde viva-
mus ; cibus.

Substantial, solidus.

Succeed (of persons, get on well),
proficio ; (of things, turn out
well), prospere evenio ; succeed
in (a design, &c.), perficio ;
efficio ut, &c. ; succeed to (a
throne), regnum excipio ; (to
come after), succedo (dat.).

Success, successus. To gain a
success, rem prospere gero ;
without success, frustra, nequi-
quam, re infecta.

Successfully, prospere.

Succession, in, deinceps.

Successive, continuus.

Such, talis ; eiusmodi ; (if of size,
&c.) tantus.

Such . . . as, talis . . . qualis.

In such a crisis as the present,
in hoc tanto discrimine.

Sudden, subitus, repentinus.

Suddenly, subito, repente, necopi-
nato.

Sue, (for an office) peto ; (in a
court of law) reum facio.

Suffer, fero, patior ; suffer from,
laboro (abl.), suffering from,
adfectus.

Suffering, dolor ; sufferings, mala.

Sufficient, satis, iustus ; (see **enough**).

To be sufficient (of supplies),
suppeto.

Sufficiently, satis.

Suggest, auctor sum, admoneo.

Suggestion, at my, me auctore.

Suicide, to commit, mortem mihi
conscisco.

Suit (lawsuit), res, causa, lis.

Suitable, idoneus, aptus.

Suits, it, convenit.

Sum, summa.

Summer, aestas.

Summit, vertex, cacumen. The
summit of the hill, mons sum-
mus.

Summon, arcesso, voco ; summon
back, revoco.

Sumptuous, opulentus, lautus.

Sun, sol. At sunrise, oriente sole, prima luce; at sunset, solis occasu.

Sup, ceno.

Superior, praestans, superior. To be superior, praesto.

Superstition, superstitio; prava religio; deorum inanis timor.

Supper, cena.

Supplies, commeatus.

Supply (noun), copia, numerus. (verb), praebeo; suppedito.

Support (noun), subsidium, auxilium (often in plur.).

(verb), (sustain) sustineo; (endure) tolero; (aid) adiuvo.

Supporter, fautor.

Suppose, puto, opinor, existimo.

Supreme, supremus, summus; supreme power, summa imperii.

Sure, certus. To be sure, pro certo habeo; (surely) scilicet.

Be sure you keep well, fac (cura ut) valeas.

Surely, scilicet, nimirum, profecto.

Surety, vas.

Surmount, supero.

Surpass, supero.

Surprise, to take by, opprimo (inopinantes hostes).

Surprised, attonitus, miratus, obstupefactus.

Surprising, mirum; it is not surprising, nec mirum.

Surrender (noun), deditio,

(verb), (trans.) dedo, trado; (intrans.) me dedo.

Surround, circumvenio, cingo, circumsto. He surrounds the city with a wall, urbem muro circumdat, or, urbi murum circumdat.

Survive, supersum.

Surviving, superstes.

Suspect, suspicor, suspicio. To be suspected, in suspicionem venio.

Suspend, intermitto.

Sustain (an attack) sustineo; (encourage) confirmo.

Swallow, hirundo.

Swarm (verb). Use fundo and compounds. Swarm round, circumfundor; swarm out, effundor.

Swear, iuro.

Sweet, dulcis, suavis.

Swift, celer, velox.

Swim, nato.

Swollen, tumidus, tumens, turgidus, turbidus.

Sword, gladius, ensis; (metaph.) arma or ferrum. By fire and sword, ferro et igni.

Sympathy, misericordia.

T

Tactics, ars militaris.

Tail, cauda.

Take (catch, capture), capio. Take by assault, expugno; take away, aufero; take away from, eripio, adimo; privo; take part in, intersum; take up arms, arma sumo; take up a position, consisto, consido; take place (happen), fio, evenio; take the place of, succedo; take to flight, terga verto, tergado, fugae me mando; in fugam vertor, fuga salutem peto; take thought for (trouble about), curo, studeo (dat.); take care that, facio ut, id ago ut; take advantage of, utor; take the same view as, idem sentio ac.

Talent, ingenium; (money) talentum.

Talk, loquor. Talk with, colloquor; talk to, adloquor.

Talkative, loquax.

Tall, procerus.

Tame, mansuetus.

Tamper with, sollicito.

Task, opus, labor.

Taste (verb), gusto.

(noun), gustatus; (met.) studium.

Taunt (verb), obicio. He taunts me with having been at Baiae, obicit mihi, me ad Baiae fuisse.

Tax (noun), vectigal.

(verb), to tax any one with anything, incuso (aliquem alicuius rei).

Teach, doceo (two accusatives).

Teacher, magister (fem. magistra).

Teaching, praecepta (plur.); doctrina.

Tear, lacrima.

Tear (verb), scindo. Tear away, eripio; tear in pieces, lanio.

Tedious, longus.

Tell, (narrate) narro; (announce) nuntio; (order) iubeo, impero; tell the truth, vera dico; tell lies, mentior; discern (distinguish), diiudico; (see chap. VII).

Temper, mens, animus.
Temperament, indoles.
Temperance, moderatio.
Temperate, abstinens, continens, sobrius, modestus.
Temple, templum, aedes.
Tempt, tento.
Ten, decem. Ten each, deni; one in ten, decimus quisque.
Tend, pertineo; (care for) curo.
 He said that this tended to the overthrow of the constitution, hoc evertendae esse reipublicae dixit.
Tent, tabernaculum.
Tenth (adj.), decimus; (noun), pars decima.
Terms, condiciones; on equal terms, aequo Marte, aequa contentione.
Terrible, terribilis. In a crisis so terrible, in hoc tanto discrimine.
Terrify, terreo.
Territory, fines (plur.), agri (plur.).
Terror, terror, pavor, metus. To be in terror, pertimesco; to inspire with terror, strike terror into, terrorem incito (dat.); terror-struck, perterritus, metu percussus.
Test, experior, tento.
Testify, declaro.
Than, quam; (or abl. of comparison).
Thank, gratias ago (dat.), gratiam habeo, refero, or debeo. (N.B. gratias is used in plur. with ago, and in sing. with other verbs).
Thanksgiving (public), supplicatio.
That, ille, (less emphatic) is; that of yours, iste. (For In order that, So that, &c., see final and consecutive clauses.)
Theft, furtum.
Then, tum, tunc; (next) deinde; (therefore, accordingly) igitur, itaque.
Thence, inde.
There, ibi, illic; (to that place) eo, illuc; (from there) inde.
Therefore, igitur, ergo, idcirco; (quam ob rem).
Thereupon, deinde, tum, quo facto.
Thick, densus, crassus.
Thicket, virgultum.
Thief, fur.
Thin, tenuis.

Think, puto, existimo, reor, arbitror; (reflect) cogito; to think little of, parvi aestimo, flocci facio, contemno; I am inclined to think that, haud scio an (subj.).
Third (adj.), tertius; (noun), pars tertia; two thirds, duae partes.
Thirst (noun), sitis; (verb), sitio.
Thirsty, sitiens.
Thirty, triginta.
This, hic.
Thorn, spina.
Thoroughly, penitus, prorsus, omnino; (or use superl. of adj.).
Though, see although.
Thousand, mille (adj.). Thousands, milia; a thousand men, mille homines; two thousand men, duo milia hominum (or, bis mille homines); a thousand times, milies; to die a thousand deaths, milies mori.
Threaten, insto, minor; (of things) immineo, impendeo. He threatens me with death, mortem mihi minatur.
 'He threatens me with death, will be In Latin, Threatens death to me.'
Threatening, minax.
Threats, minae (plur.).
Three, tres. A space of three days, triduum; three years, triennium.
Three times, ter.
Throat, guttur, iugulum.
Throne (met.), regnum, imperium. To be on the throne, regno, impero; to gain the throne, regno potior.
Throng, multitudo.
Through, throughout, per. Throughout the city, tota urbe.
Throw, iacio; conicio. Throw across, traicio; throw away, abicio; proicio; throw in or on, incio; throw off, deicio, excutio; throw into confusion, perturbo; to throw a bridge over a river, pontem in flumine facio; he threw himself at Caesar's feet, Caesari ad pedes se proiecit; he was thrown from his horse, deiectus est equo.
Thus, ita, sic, hoc modo.
Tide, aestus; rising tide, aestus crescens; ebbing tide, aestus minuens.

Tie, necessitudo.
(verb), see **bind**.

Tile, tegula.

Till, dum, donec; usque ad; not till, non prius quam; then and not till then, tum demum.

Till (verb), colo.

Time, tempus. Appointed time, term, dies (fem.); suitable time, occasio; season, tempestas; at that time, tum, id temporis, tum temporis, ea tempestate; at the same time, simul; for a little time, paulisper; for a long time, diu; in (good) time, ad tempus, tempori; in a short time, brevi (tempore); till that time, ad id temporis; for some time, aliquamdiu; in our time, nostra aetate, his temporibus; now for a long time, iamdudum, iampridem; in the meantime, interea, interim; to waste time, tempus tero; at his own time, suo tempore.

Timid, timidus.

Timidity, timiditas, pavor.

Tinge, tingo.

Tire, fatigo.

Tired, fessus, defessus, fatigatus.
I am tired of, me taedet, piget.

To, ad, in (acc.).

To-day, hodie.

Together, una, una cum; (at same time) simul.

Toll, labor; sudor.

Told, we are, accepimus, traditum est, traditur; (see chap. VII).

Tomb, sepulchrum.

To-morrow, cras; to-morrow's, crastinus.

Tongue, lingua.

Too (also), et, etiam, quoque.

Forsan et haec olim meminisse iuvabit, this too, haply, it will one day delight us to remember. (excessively) nimis, nimium (or the idea is sometimes expressed by the comparative of adjective or adverb); too little, parum (adv. used as noun); too much, nimis, nimium (adv. used as noun); too great (adj.) nimius; too late, sero.

Ne quid nimis, do nothing in excess (μηδὲν ἄγαν).

Magis offendit nimium quam

Too, *cont.*

parum, too much does more harm than too little (Cic.).

To advance too far, longius progredi.

He is too cautious to do that, prudentior est quam qui hoc faciat.

A task too great for my strength, opus maius quam pro viribus meis.

Tool, instrumentum.

Top, vertex. The top of the mountain, mons summus (lit. the mountain where it is highest).

Torch, taeda.

Torment, torture (noun), cruciatus. (verb), crucio.

Touch, tango. Touch one's heart, permovere, animum flecto; I am touched, moveor; touch on, attingo.

Towards, (of place) ad, versus, adversus; (of persons) erga, in; towards evening, sub vesperum.

Tower, turris.

Town, oppidum; town-walls, moenia. Townsfolk, oppidani.

Track, vestigium.

Tradition, there is a, traditur, traditum est, tradunt, ferunt.

Train, exerceo, exercito. Trained in, exercitatus (abl.).

Training, disciplina.

Traitor, proditor, perfidus.

Trample under foot, conculco.

Tranquillity, otium.

Transact, ago.

Transfer, transfero.

Transport, transveho. To be transported (metaph.), exardesco.

Travel, iter facio. Travel over, perlustro; (by sea) navigo; (go abroad) peregrinor.

Traveller, viator.

Traverse, lustro, perlustro.

Treacherous, perfidus.

Treachery, perfidia, proditio; fraus, dolus.

Treason, maiestas. To accuse of treason, maiestatis accuso.

Treasure, thesaurus; opes (plur.).

Treat, adficio; tracto; (deal with) utor; treat well, beneficio adficio, beneficio; treat lightly, parvi facio; treat successfully, (heal), medeor (dat.); treat of or for, ago de.

Treaty, foedus.

Tree, arbor.

Tremble, tremo.

Trench, fossa.

Trial, iudicium. To be on trial, reus sum; to put on trial, reum aliquem facio, nomen alicuius defero; to make trial of, experior, tempto.

Tribe, natio, gens; (political) tribus.

Tribune, tribunus.

Tribute, tributum, stipendium, vectigal.

Trifles (nonsense), nugae (plur.).

Trifling, levissimus, inconstans.

Triumph (noun), (triumphal procession) triumphus; (success) victoria; to return in triumph, victor redeo; in the very hour of triumph, in ipsa victoria; shouts of triumph, exsultantium clamor.

(verb), (lit.) triumpho; (metaph.) exulto; triumph over, supero (acc.).

Troop (of horse), turma.

Troops, copiae; milites.

Trouble, troubles, labor; molestiae.

Without trouble, nullo negotio; it is no trouble, nihil est negotii.

Troublesome, molestus, gravis; importunus.

Truce, indutiae.

True, verus.

Trumpet, tuba (straight); lituus (curved).

Trust, credo, fido, confido, committo (all dat.). I trust your word, fidem tibi habeo.

Trustworthy, fidus, certus.

Truth, veritas, quod verum est. To tell the truth, vera dico.

Try, conor; tento. I am trying hard to do this, id ago ut hoc faciam.

Tumult, tumultus, motus.

Turf, caespes.

Turn (trans.), verito, volvo; (intrans.) veritor, convertor; turn back, revertor; turn back or away, averto, (intrans.) avertor; turn out (happen), evenio.

Turn (noun). A turn of fortune, rerum commutatio; in turn, invicem, vicissim; each in turn, pro se quisque, singulus quisque.

Twice, bis. Twice two, bis bina; twice over, semel atque iterum.

Twin, geminus.

Two, duo. Two apiece, bini; two-thirds, duae partes; two years (space of), biennium; in two divisions, bipartito.

Tyranny, dominatio.

Tyrant, tyrannus.

U

Unable, I am, nequeo; non possum.

Unaccustomed, insolitus, insuetus.

Unanimous, (-ly), uno or omnium consensu; (or use universi or omnes); it is unanimously approved, omnium assensu (or nullo dissentiente) comprobatur.

Unarmed, inermis.

Unawares, imprudens, improvidus, inopinans.

Unbearable, non tolerandus.

Unbecoming, it is, dedecet.

Uncertain, dubius, incertus.

Uncivilized, incultus, barbarus.

Uncle, (on father's side) patruus; (on mother's side) avunculus.

Unconquerable, indomitus, invictus.

Unconstitutional, (-ly), contra rem publicam.

Uncultivated, rudis.

Undaunted, intrepidus.

Under, underneath, sub, subter. Under arms, in armis.

Undergo, subeo. To undergo sentence, poenam subeo.

Understand, intellego.

Undertake, suscipio.

Undertaking, inceptum.

Undeserved, immeritus.

Unequal, impar, dispar, iniquus.

Unexpected, inopinatus, necopinatus, subitus.

Unfavourable, adversus, iniquus.

Unfortunate, infelix, funestus.

Unfriendly, inimicus.

Unhappy, infelix, miser.

Unharmful, incolumis.

Unhealthy, pestilentus.

Unheard (of an accused person), indicta causa.

Unheard of (strange), inauditus.

Union, consensus. In union, coniuncti.

Universe, mundus.

Unjust, iniquus, iniustus.

Unknown, ignotus.
Unlike, dissimilis, dispar.
Unlimited, infinitus.
Unmindful, immemor.
Unmoved, immotus.
Unnatural (wicked), nefarius.
Unpack, sarcinas solvo.
Unpatriotic, civis malus or improbus.
Unpopularity, invidia.
Unprincipled, nequam, nequissimus; pravus.
Unprotected, apertus, sine defensoribus.
Unquestionable, it is, dubitari non potest.
Unscrupulous, improbus.
Unseemly, indecorus.
Unskilled, imperitus.
Until, see till.
Untimely, immaturus.
Untouched, integer.
Untrustworthy, infidus.
Unusual, insolitus, inusitatus.
Unversed in, imperitus (gen.).
Unwarlike, imbellis.
Unwilling, invitus. To be unwilling, nolo.
Unworthy, indignus. He is unworthy to be made consul, indignus est qui consul fiat.
Up, upwards, sursum. Up to, ad, usque ad; up hill, adverso colle.
 N.B. In compound verbs 'up' is frequently represented by *sub*, e.g. *subduco*; *naves subduxit*, he hauled up the boats (lit. drew from under).
Upright, probus.
Uproar, clamor, tumultus.
Upset, everto.
Urge, urge on, admoneo, hortor, incito, impello, urgeo, suadeo (dat.), insto (dat.). I urge this upon you, hoc tibi suadeo; he urged men to crime, in fraudem homines impulit.
Urgently, vehementer.
Use (verb), utor (abl.). (noun), usus. This is of use to me, hoc mihi usui est; to be of use, prosum (dat.).
Useful, utilis.
Useless, inutilis. This is useless to me, hoc mihi nil prodest.
Usual, solitus, usitatus.

Utmost (extreme), summus.
 To do one's utmost, pro viribus ago; id ago (ut).
 I will do my utmost to persuade him, quantum in me erit, ei persuadebo.
Utter (verb), emitto, edo.
Utterly, funditus.

V

Vacant, to be, vaco.
Vain, vanus, inanis, irritus. In vain, frustra, nequiquam.
Valley, vallis.
Valour, see courage.
Valuable, pretiosus.
Value (verb), aestimo, facio; (see chap. XXVI).
 To value highly, more highly, &c., magni, pluris, &c., aestimo.
 I value this at one penny, hoc unius assis aestimo.
 (noun), use gen. of value (see chap. XXVI).
 Your friendship is of more value to me than the applause of all the world besides, tua mihi amicitia pluris est quam ceterorum omnium plausus.
Vanguard, primum agmen.
Variance with, be at, pugno cum, disto ab, discrepo, differo.
Various, varius, diversus.
Vast, ingens.
Vehement, (-ly), vehemens, vehementer.
Vengeance on, to take, ulciscor, poenas sumo de.
Venom, venenum.
Venture, audeo, periclitor.
Verdict, sententia.
Versed in, peritus (gen.).
Very, ipse; (with adjs.), maxime, or use superl.
 Very different, longe alius.
Veteran, veteranus.
Vexed, be, aegre fero.
Victim (animal sacrificed), hostia.
Victor, victorious, victor. To come off victorious, evado victor.
Victory, victoria. To win a victory, vinco, victoriam reporto.
View, (sight) conspectus; (opinion) sententia. I take the same view as you, eadem sentio ac tu.
Vigorous, alacer, strenuus.
Vigour, vis, robur, ferocia, alacritas.

Vile, turpis.
Vileness, turpitudō.
Village, pagus, vicus.
Vine, vitis.
Vineyard, vinetum.
Violence, vis, violentia.
Virtue, virtus. In virtue of, pro (abl.).
Virtuous, probus, honestus.
Visit, viso, invisio, video.
Voice, vox; with a loud voice, magna voce.
Void, vacuus; null and void, irritus.
Voluntarily, sua sponte, ultro.
Vote (noun), (at election) suffragium; (of judge or senator) sententia; vote of thanks, supplicatio.
 (noun), suffragium fero. To vote for in the senate, in sententiam alicuius eo; the right of voting, ius suffragii.
Vow, voveo; iuro; me iureiurando obstringo.
Voyage, navigatio. Make a voyage, navigo.
Vulture, vultur.

W

Wage war with, bellum gero cum (or contra).
Wagon, plaustrum.
Wait, maneo. Wait for, exspecto.
Wake, excito.
Walk, ambulo. Take a walk in, inambulo.
Wall (of house or city), murus; city walls, moenia; partition wall, paries.
Wander, erro, vagor.
Wandering (adj.), vagus.
Want (noun), inopia; egestas; to be in want, egeo.
 (verb), (be without) careo (abl.); (need) egeo, indigeo, or use opus esse (all abl.), (be wanting, fail) deficio; desum; (wish for) volo, cupio.
War, bellum. Wage war, bellum gero; make war against, bellum (or arma) infero; declare war, bellum indico.
Warfare, militia.
Warlike, bellicosus.
Warm, tepidus, calidus, fervidus.
Warn, moneo, admoneo.

Warning, exemplum.
Waste, perdo, consumo. Lay waste, vasto, populo; (of time) consumo, tero.
Watch (noun), vigilia. About the third watch, de tertia vigilia.
 (verb), specto, intueor, observo; custodio.
Watchful, watchman, vigil.
Water, aqua, lympa.
Wave, fluctus, unda.
Waver (yield, give way), inclino.
Way, via, iter. On the way, ex itinere; (manner) modus.
Weak, infirmus, invalidus, debilis; (of weak character) levis.
Weakness, infirmitas, imbecillitas; (of forces &c.) exiguus.
Wealth, divitiae, opes (plur.).
Wealthy, dives; (of cities) opulentus.
Weapon, telum.
Wear, gero; (or pass. of induo, vestio).
Weary, fessus, or use taedet.
Weather, tempestas; or use caelum.
Weave, texo.
Web, tela.
Wed (of the man), duco (in matrimonium); (of the woman) nubo (dat.).
Wedge, cuneus.
Week, turn by approximate number of days.
Weep, fleo, lacrimo. Weep over, illacrimo (dat.).
Weigh (out), expendo. Weigh anchor, navem solvo, ancoras tollo.
Weight, pondus. He has great (no) weight with Caius, multum (nil) apud Caium valet.
Weighty, gravis.
Welcome (adj.), gratus.
Welfare, salus.
Well (noun), puteus.
 (adv.), bene; to be well, valeo, bene valeo; to know well, certo scio; well enough, satis; well known, satis notus; it is well known, constat; well disposed, benevolus; to be well-disposed, bene sentio; well earned, meritus; well-trained, exercitatus.
West, solis occasus, occidens. The west (part) of a country, pars quae ad occasum solis spectat.

Wet, madidus ; (rainy) pluvius.
What, quid ; what news ? quid novi ? what good ? quid boni ? what sort of, qualis.
Wheat, triticum.
Wheel, rota.
When (interrog.), quando ; (conj., &c.), postquam, ubi, cum (see chap. XXXIII).
Whence, unde.
Whenever, quodocunque, ubicumque, cum, quoties.
Where, ubi, qua ; (interrog.), ubi ; (whither) quo ; where in the world, ubinam gentium.
Wherefore, cur, quare, quamobrem.
Whereupon, quo facto.
Whether, num ; **whether** . . . or (double question), utrum . . . an ; (double cond.) sive . . . sive (seu).
Which, see **who** ; which of two, uter.
While, dum, donec, quoad ; for a while, paulisper.
Whip, flagellum, flagrum, verber.
Whisper (noun), susurrus. (verb), susurro.
White, albus, candidus.
Whither, quo ; whithersoever, quocumque.
Who, **what** (interrog.) (subst.), quis, quid ; (adj.), qui, quod ; (rel.), qui, quae, quod.
Whoever, quicumque, quisquis.
Whole, totus, omnis, cunctus, universus.
Holly, omnino.
Why, cur, quare, quamobrem.
Wicked, improbus, nefarius, malus, perditus, nequissimus.
Wickedness, nequitia, scelus ; (see crime).
Wide, latus.
Widow, vidua.
Width, latitudo.
Wife, uxor, coniunx.
Wild, ferus, agrestis.
Will (wish), voluntas ; (testament) testamentum ; against my will, me invito ; good will, benevolentia.
Willingly, libenter.
Willow, salix.
Win (obtain), consequor, nanciscor, adipiscor, acquiror, potior (abl.). To win favour, concilio ; to win a victory, victoriam reporto, vinco.

Wind, ventus.
Window, fenestra.
Wing, ala ; (of an army) cornu. On the right wing, a dextro cornu.
Winter, hiems, bruma. (adj.), hibernus ; winter quarters, hiberna (n. pl.). (verb), hiemo.
Wisdom, sapientia, prudentia, consilium.
Wise, sapiens, prudens. To be wise, sapio ; in no wise, haudquam ; nequaquam ; all the wisest men, sapientissimus quisque ; he is wiser than (too wise) to do that, sapientior est quam qui hoc faciat.
Wish (verb), volo, opto ; wish not, nolo. (noun), voluntas, votum. Your wishes, quae vis ; against your wish, te invito.
Wit, sales (plur.), lepor, festivitas, facetiae.
With (along with), cum.
Withdraw (retire), pedem refero, me recipio ; (trans.) abduco, subduco.
Within, intra. To within (adv.), intro. Within two days, biduo (abl. of time within which). Within the memory of man, post hominum memoriam. I was within a little of telling the whole truth, minimum abfuit quin vera omnia dicerem.
Without, sine, absque ; without the knowledge of, clam (acc.) ; to be without, careo ; without accomplishing anything, re infecta. Nunquam eum adspexi quin accusarem, I never saw him without accusing him.
Withstand, resisto (dat.), obsto (dat.).
Witty, lepidus, facetus, urbanus.
Witness, testis.
Wolf, lupus.
Woman, mulier, femina.
Wonder (at), miror, admiror.
Wonderful, mirus, mirabilis, mirandus.
Wont, am, soleo, consuesco.
Wood, silva ; (grove) nemus ; (timber) lignum, (for building) materia.

Wool, lana.

Woollen, laneus.

Word, verbum; words, dicta. To keep one's word, fidem praesto.

Work (toil), labor; a work (the result of toil), opus.

(verb), laboro; operam do; work upon (any one's feelings) flecto.

Workmen, operae.

Workshop, officina.

World, orbis terrarum; (universe) mundus; (people in general) homines, omnes, &c.; the rest of the world, ceterae gentes; in the world (after neg.), usquam; all the world knows, nemo est quin sciat.

Worn out, confectus.

Worse, peior, deterior. To change for the worse, in peius mutari.

Worship (verb), colo.
(noun), cultus.

Worst, pessimus. Worst enemies, inimicissimi.

Worth, virtus, dignitas; (of value) pretium; to think worth, aestimo, facio (with gen. of value); it is worth while, operae pretium est.

Worthless, inutilis; nihili; (morally) nequam.

Worthy of, dignus (abl.).

Would that, utinam.

Wound (noun), vulnus.

(verb), vulnero; wounded, vulneratus, saucius.

Wreak (vengeance or anger), ulciscor.

Wreck (noun), naufragium.

(verb), frango.

Wrench, convello; extorqueo.

Wretched, miser, infelix.

Wretches, perditii.

Wrinkle, ruga.

Write, scribo; (to any one) ad aliquem.

Wrong (noun), iniuria; to do wrong, pecco; to be wrong, erro; he does me a wrong, iniuriam mihi infert.

(adj.), pravus; (mistaken) falsus; (unjust) iniquus, iniustus; it is morally wrong, nefas est.

Wrongly, wrongfully, iniuria, falso, iniuste, inique.

Y

Year, annus. A boy ten years old, puer decem annos natus, puer decem annorum; when already eighty years old, ubi iam octogesimum annum agebat.

Yearly (adv.), quotannis.

Yellow, flavus.

Yes, etiam, ita vero; or repeat verb. I say yes, aio.

Yesterday, heri; of yesterday (adj.), hesternus.

Yet, (temporal) adhuc; (nevertheless) tamen; vero. Not yet, nondum.

Yield, (produce) fero; (give up) (trans.) dedo; (intrans.) cedo.

Yoke, iugum. To send under the yoke, sub iugum mitto.

You (sing.), tu; (plur.), vos.

Young, iuvenis, iunior; adolescens. Younger, natu minor.

Your (sing.), tuus; (plur.), vester.

Yourself, ipse; (reflexive) te, vos.

Youth, (time of) iuventus; a youth, iuvenis; adolescens; (a body of youth) iuventus.

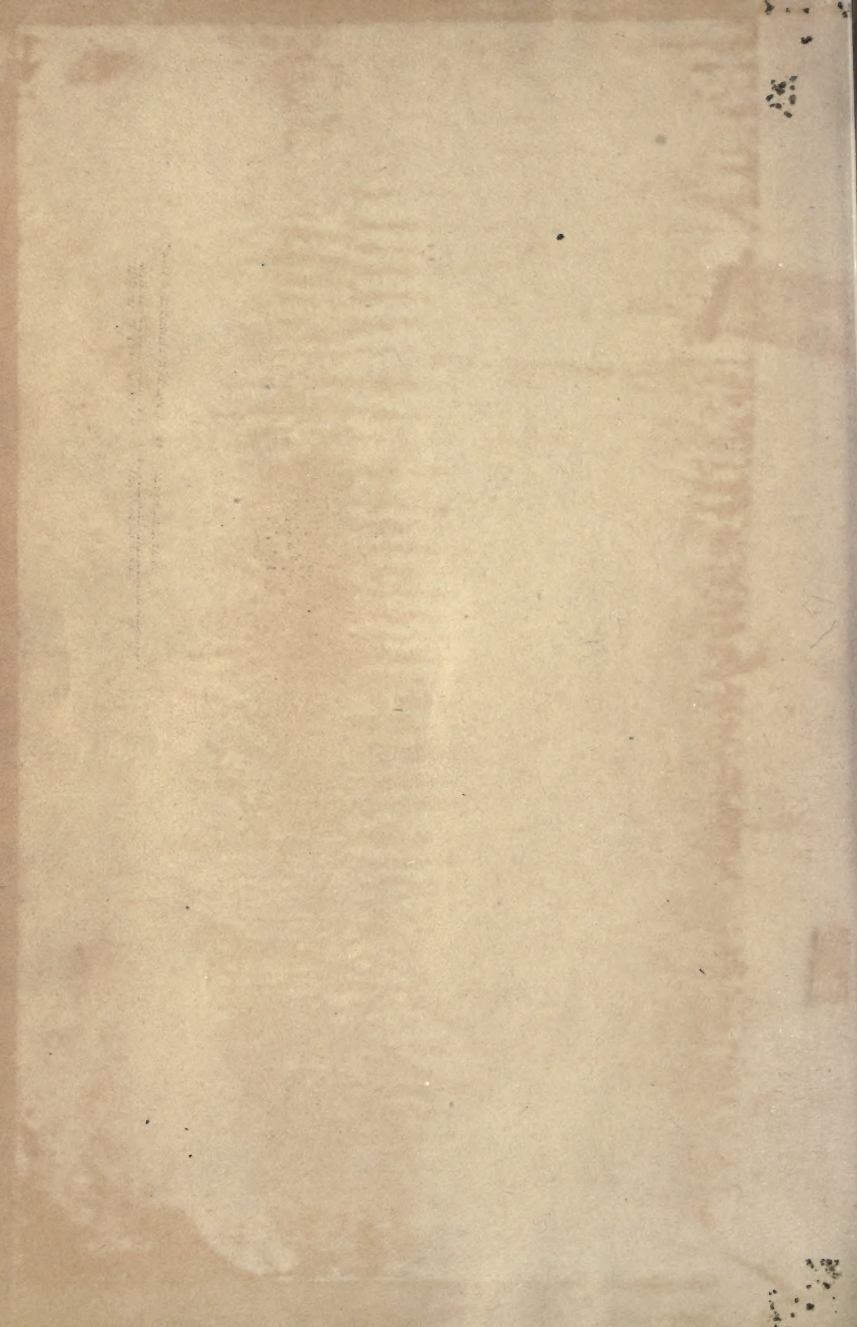
In my youth I had great energy, multum vigorem iuvenis habebam.

Z

Zeal, studium.

Zealous, studiosus.

PRINTED IN ENGLAND
AT THE OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS



PA 2087 .P63 SMC

PILSBURY, E. H.
LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION FOR
MIDDLE AND UPPER

AKJ-1348 (AB)

